

Official publication of the Croatian Society for Geometry and Graphics publishes scientific and professional papers from the fields of geometry, applied geometry and computer graphics.

## Founder and Publisher

Croatian Society for Geometry and Graphics

## Editors

Sonja Gorjanc, Faculty of Civil Engineering, University of Zagreb, Croatia (Editor-in-Chief) Ema Jurkin, Faculty of Mining, Geology and Petroleum Engineering, University of Zagreb, Croatia Marija Šimić Horvath, Faculty of Architecture, University of Zagreb, Croatia

## Editorial Board

Jelena Beban-Brkić, Faculty of Geodesy, University of Zagreb, Croatia Sonja Gorjanc, Faculty of Civil Engineering, University of Zagreb, Croatia Emil Molnár, Institute of Mathematics, Budapest University of Technology and Economics, Hungary Otto RöSchel, Institute of Geometry, Graz University of Technology, Austria AnA SLIEPČEVIĆ, Faculty of Civil Engineering, University of Zagreb, Croatia Hellmuth Stachel, Institute of Geometry, Vienna University of Technology, Austria Nikoleta Sudeta, Faculty of Architecture, University of Zagreb, Croatia Vlasta Szirovicza, Faculty of Civil Engineering, University of Zagreb, Croatia Gunter Weiss, Institute of Geometry, Dresden University of Technology, Germany

## Design

Miroslav Ambruš-Kiš

## Layout

Sonja Gorjanc, Ema Jurkin

## Cover Illustration

F. V. Holi, Eleven Seagulls, photography

## Print

"O-TISAK", d.o.o., Zagreb

## URL address

http://www.hdgg.hr/kog
http://hrcak.srce.hr

## Edition

250

## Published annually

## Guide for authors

Please, see the last page
KoG is cited in: Mathematical Reviews, MathSciNet, Zentralblatt für Mathematik

[^0]
## CONTENTS

ORIGINAL SCIENTIFIC PAPERS
M. Szilvási-Nagy, S. Béla: Stitching B-spline Curves Symbolically ..... 3
H. Okumura: Lamoenian Circles of the Collinear Arbelos ..... 9
N. J. Wildberger, A. Alkhaldi: The Parabola in Universal Hyperbolic Geometry I ..... 14
B. Odehnal: Conchoids on the Sphere ..... 43
G. Csima, J. Szirmai: On the Isoptic Hypersurfaces in the $n$-Dimensional Euclidean Space ..... 53
A. Sliepčević, I. Božić, H. Halas: Introduction to the Planimetry of the Quasi-Hyperbolic Plane ..... 58
PROFESSIONAL PAPERS
M. Čuljak: Isometries in Escher's Work ..... 65

## SADRŽAJ

ORIGINALNI ZNANSTVENI RADOVI
M. Szilvási-Nagy, S. Béla: Simboličko spajanje B-splajn krivulja ..... 3
H. Okumura: Lamoenove kružnice kolinearnog arbelosa ..... 9
N. J. Wildberger, A. Alkhaldi: Parabola u univerzalnoj hiperboličkoj geometriji I ..... 14
B. Odehnal: Konhoide na sferi ..... 43
G. Csima, J. Szirmai: O izooptičkim hiperplohama u $n$-dimenzionalnom euklidskom prostoru ..... 53
A. Sliepčević, I. Božić, H. Halas: Uvod u planimetriju kvazi-hiperboličke ravnine ..... 58
STRUČNI RADOVI
M. Čuljak: Izometrije u Escherovim radovima ..... 65

# Stitching B-Spline Curves Symbolically 

## Stitching B-spline Curves Symbolically


#### Abstract

We present an algorithm for stitching B-spline curves, which is different from the generally used least square method. Our aim is to find a symbolic solution for unifying the control polygons of arcs separately described as 4th degree B-spline curves. We show the effect of interpolation conditions and fairing functions as well.


Key words: B-spline curve, B-spline surface, merging, interpolation, fairing

MSC2010: 65D17, 65D05, 65D07, 68U05, 68U07

## 1 Introduction

Stitching or merging B-spline curves is a frequently used technique in geometric modeling, and is usually implemented in CAD-systems. These algorithms are basically numerical interpolations using the least squares method. The problem, how to replace two or more curves which are generated separately and defined as B-spline curves, has well functioning numerical solutions, therefore, relatively few papers have been published about this topic. In [6] and [3] methods for approximate merging of B-spline curves and surfaces are given. In [4] one of the symbolical algorithms is described, which extends B-spline curves by adding more interpolation points one by one at the end of the curve. In [5] the construction of a covering surface is shown for unifying more B -spline surfaces.
We approach the stitching problem from a geometrical point of view, and represent a symbolical solution to compute the control points of the new curve from the control points of the two given curve segments and appropriate interpolation conditions. This symbolical solution is stable, it can be used generally for any two given curves. The error of the interpolation depends on the curvatures of the input curves. Larger difference in their curvatures raises the error. In order to reduce the error, two of the new control points are adjusted by fairing conditions using the concrete numerical data. This computation requires minimization of quadratic functions leading to solve linear equations. In this way we avoid non-linear optimization problems. Applying fairing functions for modifying the shape and the


#### Abstract

Simboličko spajanje B-splajn krivulja SAŽETAK

Predstavljamo algoritam za spajanje B-splajn krivulja, koji se razlikuje od općenito upotrebljavane metode najmanjih kvadrata. Naš cilj je naći simboličko rješenje za ujedinjavanje kontrolnih poligona lukova koji se svaki zasebno opisuju kao B-splajn krivulje 4. stupnja. Također pokazujemo utjecaj uvjeta interpolacije i postizanja glatkih funkcija.


Ključne riječi: B-splajn krivulja, B-splajn ploha, integriranje, interpolacija, postizanje glatkoće
properties of curves and surfaces is a standard technique. In [7], [8] and [9] constructions of B-spline surfaces with boundary conditions are presented using fairing functions. Finally, merging of B-spline surface patches are shown applying the developed curve stitching method for their parameter curves.

## 2 Symbolical solution for stitching two B-spline curve segments

In our symbolical solution for stitching two given curves we assume that they are represented by B-spline segments of degree 4 with uniform periodic knot vectors. The oneparameter vector function of such a curve is

$$
\mathbf{r}(t)=\left(\begin{array}{lllll}
t^{4} & t^{3} & t^{2} & t & 1
\end{array}\right) \cdot \mathbf{M} \cdot\left(\begin{array}{l}
\mathbf{p}_{0} \\
\mathbf{p}_{1} \\
\mathbf{p}_{2} \\
\mathbf{p}_{3} \\
\mathbf{p}_{4}
\end{array}\right), 0 \leq t \leq 1
$$

where

$$
\mathbf{M}=\frac{1}{24}\left(\begin{array}{ccccc}
1 & -4 & 6 & -4 & 1 \\
-4 & 12 & -12 & 4 & 0 \\
6 & -6 & -6 & 6 & 0 \\
-4 & -12 & 12 & 4 & 0 \\
1 & 11 & 11 & 1 & 0
\end{array}\right)
$$

[^1]

Figure 1: Input data and control points of one curve segment
We recall the symbolical solution of the interpolation problem ([10]), where the input data are the interpolation points $\mathbf{p s}, \mathbf{p m}, \mathbf{p e}$, and the derivatives at the endpoints ts and te (Fig. 1). The output is the 5 control points $\mathbf{p}_{i}, i=0, \ldots, 4$ computed from the conditions
$\mathbf{r}(0)=\mathbf{p s}, \mathbf{r}(0.5)=\mathbf{p m}, \mathbf{r}(1)=\mathbf{p e}, \dot{\mathbf{r}}(0)=\mathbf{t s}, \dot{\mathbf{r}}(1)=\mathbf{t e}$.
The control points are expressed by the input data as the solution of this system of linear equations.
$\left(\begin{array}{l}\mathbf{p}_{0} \\ \mathbf{p}_{1} \\ \mathbf{p}_{2} \\ \mathbf{p}_{3} \\ \mathbf{p}_{4}\end{array}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{c}-30.1667 \mathbf{p e}-46.1667 \mathbf{p s}+77.3333 \mathbf{p m}+6.33333 \mathbf{t e}-16.3333 \mathbf{t s} \\ 7.83333 \mathbf{p e}+11.8333 \mathbf{p s}-18.6667 \mathbf{p m}-1.66667 \mathbf{t}+2.66667 \mathbf{t s} \\ -6.16667 \mathbf{p e}-6.16667 \mathbf{p s}+13.3333 \mathbf{p m}+1.33333 \mathbf{t e}-1.33333 \mathbf{t s} \\ 11.8333 \mathbf{p e}+7.83333 \mathbf{p s}-18.6667 \mathbf{p m}-2.66667 \mathbf{t}+1.66667 \mathbf{t s} \\ -46.1667 \mathbf{p e}-30.1667 \mathbf{p s}+77.3333 \mathbf{p m}+16.3333 \mathbf{t e}-6.33333 \mathbf{t s}\end{array}\right)$
In order to demonstrate the behaviour of this symbolic interpolation method we approximated a circular arc $\mathbf{c}(t)$ with central angle $\leq \pi / 3$ interpolated by the curve $\mathbf{r}(t)$. The numerical error measured by $\int_{0}^{1}(\mathbf{c}(t)-\mathbf{r}(t))^{2} d t$ is less than $10^{-28}$, i.e approximately zero.
We use this experience for stitching two joining B-spline curve segments. In that algorithm we will use also similar interpolation data and B-spline functions of degree 4.


Figure 2: Merging two curves into $4 B$-spline segments
We assume that the two input segments are given by B-spline functions, one by $\mathbf{r}_{1}(t)$ with control points $\mathbf{p}_{1 j}$ and the other by $\mathbf{r}_{2}(t)$ with control points $\mathbf{p}_{2 j},(j=0, \ldots, 4)$. We generate the resulting B-spline curve with 4 segments $\mathbf{q}_{i}(t), 0 \leq t \leq 1,(i=1, \ldots, 4)$ determined by 8 control points $\mathbf{b}_{j},(j=0, \ldots, 7)$.

The interpolation conditions are 5 points +3 tangent vectors (Fig. 2).

$$
\begin{gathered}
\mathbf{q}_{1}(0)=\mathbf{r}_{1}(0), \mathbf{q}_{2}(0)=\mathbf{r}_{1}(0.5), \mathbf{q}_{2}(1)=\mathbf{r}_{1}(1) \\
\mathbf{q}_{3}(1)=\mathbf{r}_{2}(0.5), \mathbf{q}_{4}(1)=\mathbf{r}_{2}(1) \\
\dot{\mathbf{q}}_{1}(0)=\dot{\mathbf{r}}_{1}(0), \dot{\mathbf{q}}_{2}(1)=\dot{\mathbf{r}}_{1}(1), \dot{\mathbf{q}}_{4}(1)=\dot{\mathbf{r}}_{2}(1)
\end{gathered}
$$

These 8 equations are linear in the unknown control points of the new B-spline curve. The solution of the system results in the required control points $\mathbf{b}_{j},(j=0, \ldots, 7)$ expressed as linear combinations of the given control points $\mathbf{p}_{1 i}, \mathbf{p}_{2 i},(i=0, \ldots, 4)$.
Especially,

$$
\begin{array}{cc}
\mathbf{b}_{0}= & 1.07083 \mathbf{p}_{10}+2.0166 \mathbf{p}_{11}-4.2305 \mathbf{p}_{12}+3.7694 \mathbf{p}_{13}+1.4069 \mathbf{p}_{14} \\
& -0.0090 \mathbf{p}_{20}-0.6500 \mathbf{p}_{21}-1.8236 \mathbf{p}_{22}-0.5416 \mathbf{p}_{23}-0.0090 \mathbf{p}_{24} \\
\mathbf{b}_{1}= & -0.01527 \mathbf{p}_{10}+0.5944 \mathbf{p}_{11}+1.0083 \mathbf{p}_{12}-0.9638 \mathbf{p}_{13}-0.3236 \mathbf{p}_{14} \\
& +0.0020 \mathbf{p}_{20}+0.1500 \mathbf{p}_{21}+0.4208 \mathbf{p}_{22}+0.1250 \mathbf{p}_{23}+0.0020 \mathbf{p}_{24} \\
\mathbf{b}_{2}= & 0.0090 \mathbf{p}_{10}+0.2055 \mathbf{p}_{11}+0.2930 \mathbf{p}_{12}+0.7444 \mathbf{p}_{13}+0.2145 \mathbf{p}_{14} \\
& -0.0013 \mathbf{p}_{20}-0.1000 \mathbf{p}_{21}-0.2805 \mathbf{p}_{22}-0.0833 \mathbf{p}_{23}-0.0013 \mathbf{p}_{24} \\
\mathbf{b}_{3}= & -0.0020 \mathbf{p}_{10}+0.1833 \mathbf{p}_{11}+0.9152 \mathbf{p}_{12}-0.3555 \mathbf{p}_{13}-0.2076 \mathbf{p}_{14} \\
& +0.0013 \mathbf{p}_{20}+0.1000 \mathbf{p}_{21}+0.2805 \mathbf{p}_{22}+0.0833 \mathbf{p}_{23}+0.0013 \mathbf{p}_{24} \\
\mathbf{b}_{4}=\quad & 0.0013 \mathbf{p}_{10}-0.1222 \mathbf{p}_{11}+0.0750 \mathbf{p}_{12}+1.4361 \mathbf{p}_{13}+0.3097 \mathbf{p}_{14} \\
& -0.0020 \mathbf{p}_{20}-0.1500 \mathbf{p}_{21}-0.4208 \mathbf{p}_{22}-0.1250 \mathbf{p}_{23}-0.0020 \mathbf{p}_{24} \\
\mathbf{b}_{5}= & -0.0013 \mathbf{p}_{10}+0.1222 \mathbf{p}_{11}-0.1861 \mathbf{p}_{12}-1.6305 \mathbf{p}_{13}-0.3375 \mathbf{p}_{14} \\
& +0.0090 \mathbf{p}_{20}+0.6500 \mathbf{p}_{21}+1.8236 \mathbf{p}_{22}+0.5416 \mathbf{p}_{23}+0.0090 \mathbf{p}_{24} \\
\mathbf{b}_{6}= & 0.0020 \mathbf{p}_{10}-0.1833 \mathbf{p}_{11}+0.3069 \mathbf{p}_{12}+2.4944 \mathbf{p}_{13}+0.5131 \mathbf{p}_{14} \\
& -0.01527 \mathbf{p}_{20}-0.8500 \mathbf{p}_{21}-1.3361 \mathbf{p}_{22}+0.0833 \mathbf{p}_{23}-0.01527 \mathbf{p}_{24} \\
\mathbf{b}_{7}=\quad & -0.0090 \mathbf{p}_{10}+0.7944 \mathbf{p}_{11}-1.4041 \mathbf{p}_{12}-10.9388 \mathbf{p}_{13}-2.2423 \mathbf{p}_{14} \\
& +0.0708 \mathbf{p}_{20}+3.3500 \mathbf{p}_{21}+6.0583 \mathbf{p}_{22}+4.2500 \mathbf{p}_{23}+1.0708 \mathbf{p}_{24}
\end{array}
$$

The range of magnitudes of the coefficients show that the solution is stable. The corresponding vector equation of the unified B-spline curve is

$$
\mathbf{q}_{i}(t)=\left(\begin{array}{lllll}
t^{4} & t^{3} & t^{2} & t & 1
\end{array}\right) \cdot \mathbf{M} \cdot\left(\begin{array}{c}
\mathbf{b}_{i+j-1} \\
\mathbf{b}_{i+j} \\
\mathbf{b}_{i+j+1} \\
\mathbf{b}_{i+j+2} \\
\mathbf{b}_{i+j+3}
\end{array}\right), 0 \leq t \leq 1
$$

where $i=1, \ldots, 4$ (4 segments), $j=0, \ldots, 4$ (each with 5 control points).
The examples show that the interpolation error depends on the variation of the curvatures of the given input curves. This error is measured by the integrated sum of the quadratic difference between the corresponding points of the given and the computed new curves, while each segment is parametrized on the $[0,1]$ interval. That is, the error

$$
\begin{gathered}
\text { error }=\sum_{\text {all segments }} \int_{0}^{1}\left(\mathbf{r}_{i k}(t)-\mathbf{q}_{j}(t)\right)^{2} d t \\
\quad(i=1,2, k=1,2, j=1 \ldots 4)
\end{gathered}
$$

Fig. 2 shows the segmentation of the curves, where each of the given curves $\mathbf{r}_{1}(t)$ and $\mathbf{r}_{2}(t)$ is divided into two parts. In Fig. 3 the result of stitching two circular arcs of equal curvatures is shown with the computed control points. The interpolation points are marked by circles. The new B-spline curve interpolates the given arcs practically with zero $\left(10^{-26}\right)$ error. If the curvatures of the two arcs are different, the error is larger (Fig. 4 and Fig. 5, the given curves are drawn lighter, the interpolation points are marked with circles, the interpolation derivatives are not shown). Moreover, the resulting curve shows a wavy shape due to the low number of interpolation conditions.
The interpolation error can be reduced by prescribing more interpolation conditions. The shape of the curve can be improved by fairing (smoothing) conditions.


Figure 3: Merged circular arcs, error $\approx 0$


Figure 4: Merged curves with different curvatures, error $=0,0066$


Figure 5: Merged curves with more different curvatures, error $=0,026$

## 3 The effect of fairing conditions

The solution, where 8 control points are determined from $2 \times 5$ given control points, result in a uniquely determined B-spline curve with 4 segments. In order to apply fairing conditions free control points are necessary. Therefore, the prescribed 8 interpolation conditions have to be relaxed. In our investigation we have deleted two interpolation points (the midpoints of the input curves), and have chosen two variable control points $\mathbf{b}_{3}$ and $\mathbf{b}_{4}$ for modifying the shape of the resulting curve. In this case 3 points and 3 derivatives are prescribed,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathbf{q}_{1}(0)=\mathbf{r}_{1}(0), \mathbf{q}_{2}(1)=\mathbf{r}_{1}(1), \mathbf{q}_{4}(1)=\mathbf{r}_{2}(1) \\
& \dot{\mathbf{q}}_{1}(0)=\dot{\mathbf{r}}_{1}(0), \dot{\mathbf{q}}_{2}(1)=\dot{\mathbf{r}}_{1}(1), \dot{\mathbf{q}}_{2}(1)=\dot{\mathbf{r}}_{2}(1)
\end{aligned}
$$

We consider the same integrated sum of the quadratic differences between the given and required B-spline curve segments, which measures the interpolation error, but now it contains two free control points, and is considered as target function to be minimized.

$$
\begin{gathered}
F\left(\mathbf{b}_{3}, \mathbf{b}_{4}\right)=\sum_{\text {all segments }} \int_{0}^{1}\left(\mathbf{r}_{i k}(t)-\mathbf{q}_{j}(t)\right)^{2} d t \\
(i=1,2, k=1,2, j=1 \ldots 4)
\end{gathered}
$$

This function is quadratic in the variables. Therefore, the minimization leads to a system of linear equations. The minimal value measures the interpolation error.


Figure 6: The error $=0,024$
Though the error has been reduced, but the shape is still wavy. In order to get smoother curve, we add to the target function two additional terms. One is for minimizing the difference of the derivatives between the given and required curves, the other for minimizing the variation of the second derivative of the middle curve segments $\mathbf{q}_{2}(t)$ and $\mathbf{q}_{3}(t)$, where the curvatures of the given curves show larger difference.
The extended target function is

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \sum_{\text {all segments }}\left[\int_{0}^{1}\left(\mathbf{r}_{i k}(t)-\mathbf{q}_{j}(t)\right)^{2} d t\right. \\
& \left.\quad+0,2 \cdot \int_{0}^{1}\left(\dot{\mathbf{r}}_{i k}(t)-\dot{\mathbf{q}}_{j}(t)\right)^{2}\right] d t \\
& \quad+0,1 \cdot \sum_{j=2}^{3} \int_{0}^{1} \ddot{\mathbf{q}}_{j}(t)^{2} d t
\end{aligned}
$$

The minimization of this target function results in a smoother curve and larger error. The coefficients 0,2 and 0,1 are chosen by experiments. If the weight of the third term is larger, the upper bump in the new merged curve disappears and the error is growing (Fig. 7). It is obvious that smoothing requires more interpolation conditions.


Figure 7: After fairing the error $=0,048$

## 4 Improving the solution

More interpolation conditions lead to more control points, therefore, the resulting curve will consist of more curve segments. After several experiments our solution will have 8 curve segments with 12 new control points (Fig. 8). Accordingly, the input curves have to be segmented each into 4 parts.


Figure 8: Segmentation of the merged curve
First, all the 12 new control points are computed from 12 interpolation conditions, which are 7 interpolation points and 5 tangent vectors. The interpolation points are points of the input curves corresponding to the starting point of the curve segment $\mathbf{q}_{1}(t)$ and to the end points of the 1., 2 ., 4., 6., 7., 8. curve segments (Fig. 8). The first derivatives are prescribed at the two end points, at the midpoints and at the joining point of the given curves. These conditions expressed with the B -spline vector functions are linear in the unknown control points $\mathbf{b}_{i}, i=0, \ldots, 11$. The solution is expressed by linear combinations of the given control points $\mathbf{p}_{1 j}$ and $\mathbf{p}_{2 j}, j=0, \ldots, 4$. This symbolical solution is shown in Fig. 9. The error has been succesfully reduced from 0,026 to 0,0035 .


Figure 9: Merged curve computed by the symbolical solution. The error $=0,0035$.

If the given curves do not join, but there is a gap between them, the interpolation point is the midpoint between the two end points of the given curves and similarly, the interpolation tangent vector at this point is the middle value of the two end tangents. In this way a B-spline curve can be determined which replaces parts of the two given curves and connect them smoothly (Fig. 10).


Figure 10: Stitching two curves with a gap


Figure 11: The control polygon with two variable control points

The shape of the solution can be improved by applying fairing conditions. Our investigations have shown that two variable control points provide satisfactory solutions. Fig. 11 shows the control polygon of the merged B -spline curve with 10 precomputed and 2 free control points. The interpolation conditions are now 7 points and 3 tangent vectors, and the fairing condition is given by the same target function as in Section 2, but with 8 curve segments. The solution of minimization results in a slightly smoother curve. The interpolation error slightly increased in this case from 0,0035 to 0,004 . The picture of the curve looks like in Fig. 9 , the difference is not visible.
The symbolical solution (without fairing) leads to smoother curve and smaller error, if the variation of the curvatures of the given curve is smaller. On the base of this experience we have applied it for stitching B-spline patches.

## 5 Stitching two B-spline patches

We assume that the surface patches are represented by twoparameter vector functions of $4 \times 4$ degree with periodical uniform knot vectors. The matrix form is

$$
\begin{gathered}
\mathbf{r}(u, v)=\left(u^{4} u^{3} u^{2} u 1\right) \cdot \mathbf{M} \cdot \mathbf{B} \cdot \mathbf{M}^{T} \cdot\left(v^{4} v^{3} v^{2} v 1\right)^{T} \\
(u, v) \in[0,1] \times[0,1]
\end{gathered}
$$

and

$$
\mathbf{M}=\frac{1}{24}\left(\begin{array}{ccccc}
1 & -4 & 6 & -4 & 1 \\
-4 & 12 & -12 & 4 & 0 \\
6 & -6 & -6 & 6 & 0 \\
-4 & -12 & 12 & 4 & 0 \\
1 & 11 & 11 & 1 & 0
\end{array}\right)
$$

The geometric data are the points of the control net denoted by

$$
\mathbf{B}=[\mathbf{b}[i, j]], \quad i=0, \ldots 4, \quad j=0, \ldots 4
$$

In the computation of merging two given $B$-spline patches we apply the symbolical solution shown for merging two B-spline curve segments. Each given control net consists of $5 \times 5$ control points. The new control net of $5 \times 12$ control points are computed row by row by the same scheme applied for curves. The resulting surface has $1 \times 8$ patches joining with third order continuity, if there are no multiple control points and knot values.
In Fig. 12 two B-spline surface patches are shown defined separately. In Fig. 13 the merged surface is shown. The interpolation error has been computed by numerical integration of the squared differences between the points of the given and the resulting surfaces at the same parameter values. This estimated error is 0,0032 .


Figure 12: Two given surface patches


Figure 13: The merged surface
Stitching of separately defined B-spline patches ensures higher order continuity along the joining curves than known constructions. In several applications surfaces are determined by local geometric data ([10], [11]). This is the case for example in surface manufacturing in a neighborhood of a processing tool, however, a smooth resulting surface is required. A series in a stripe of separately generated surface patches are shown in [12].

## 6 Conclusions

We have presented stitching algorithms for two given B-spline curve segments. Our final symbolical solution generates a B-spline curve with 8 segments independently from the numerical input data. This continuous curve approximates the two separately defined (even not joining) curve segments. We have proposed an additional fairing method to improve the shape of the resulting curve. We have also analyzed the interpolation error in many different cases. The proposed algorithm gave the most satisfactory result. This has been applied for merging two B-spline surface patches.
Our aim is to extend this method for stitching more B-spline curves.

## References

[1] M.P. Do Carmo, Differential Geometry of Curves and Surfaces. Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ., 1976.
[2] D. Salomon, Computer Graphics \& Geometric Modeling. Springer-Verlag, 1999.
[3] J. Chen, G. Wang, Approximate merging of Bspline curves and surfaces. Appl. Math. J. Chinese Univ. 25/4(2010) 429-436.
[4] SM. Hu, CL. Tai, SH. Zhang, An extension algorithm for B-splines by curve unclamping. ComputerAided Design 34(2002) 415-419.
[5] H. Pungotra, G. K. Knopf, Canas, Roberto; Merging multiple B -spline surface patches in a virtual reality Environment. Computer-Aided Design 42(2010) 847-859.
[6] CL. Tai, SM. Hu, QX. Huang, Approximate merging of B-spline curves via knot adjustment and constrained optimization. Computer-Aided Design 35(2003) 893-899.
[7] M. SZILVÁSI-NAGY, Shaping and fairing of tubular B-spline surfaces. Computer Aided Geometric Design 14(1997) 699-706.
[8] M. SZILVÁSI-NAGY, Almost curvature continuous fitting of B-spline surfaces. Journal for Geometry and Graphics 2(1998) 33-43.
[9] M. SZILVÁSI-NAGY, Closing pipes by extension of B-spline surfaces. $K o G 2(1998)$ 13-19.
[10] M. SZILVÁsi-NAGY, Surface patches constructed from curvature data. $K o G 14(2010)$ 29-34.
[11] M. SZILVÁsi-NAGY, S. BÉla, B-spline patches fitting on surfaces and triangular meshes. $K o G$ 15(2011) 43-49.
[12] M. SZilvási-NAGy, S. Béla, B-spline patches constructed from inner data. In Sixth Hungarian Conference on Computer Graphics and Geometry, Budapest 2012, 30-33.

## Márta Szilvási-Nagy

e-mail: szilvasi@math.bme.hu
Szilvia Béla
email: belus@math.bme.hu

## Dept. of Geometry

Budapest University of Technology and Economics
H-1521 Budapest, Hungary

## Lamoenian Circles of the Collinear Arbelos

## Lamoenian Circles of the Collinear Arbelos

ABSTRACT
We give an infinite sets of circles which generate Archimedean circles of a collinear arbelos.

Key words: arbelos, collinear arbelos, radical circle, Lamoenian circle

MSC2010: 51M04, 51M15, 51N20

## 1 Introduction

For a point $O$ on the segment $A B$, let $\alpha, \beta$ and $\gamma$ be circles with diameters $A O, B O$ and $A B$ respectively. Each of the areas surrounded by the three circles is called an arbelos. The radical axis of the circles $\alpha$ and $\beta$ divides each of the arbeloi into two curvilinear triangles with congruent incircles (see the lower part of Figure 1). Circles congruent to those circles are said to be Archimedean.


Figure 1: A circle generating Archimedean circles with $\gamma$

For a point $T$ and a circle $\delta$, if two congruent circles of radius $r$ touching at $T$ also touch $\delta$ at points different from $T$, we say $T$ generates circles of radius $r$ with $\delta$, and the two circles are said to be generated by $T$ with $\delta$. If the

## Lamoenove kružnice kolinearnog arbelosa SAŽETAK <br> Pokazujemo beskonačne skupove kružnica koje generiraju Arhimedove kružnice kolinearnog arbelosa.

Ključne riječi: arbelos, kolinearni arbelos, potencijalna kružnica, Lamoenova kružnica
generated circles are Archimedean, we say $T$ generates Archimedean circles with $\delta$. Frank Power seems to be the earliest discoverer of this kind Archimedean circles: The farthest points on $\alpha$ and $\beta$ from $A B$ generate Archimedean circles with $\gamma[6]$.
Let $I$ be one of the points of intersection of $\gamma$ and the radical axis of $\alpha$ and $\beta$. Floor van Lamoen has found that the endpoints of the diameter of the circle with diameter $I O$ perpendicular to the line joining the centers of this circle and $\gamma$ generate Archimedean circles with $\gamma$ [2] (see the upper part of Figure 1). We say a circle $\mathcal{C}$ generates circles of radius $r$ with $\delta$, if the endpoints of a diameter of $\mathcal{C}$ generate circles of radius $r$ with $\delta$. Circles generating Archimedean circles with $\gamma$ are said to be Lamoenian. In this article we consider those circles in a general way.

## 2 The collinear arbelos

In this section we consider a generalized arbelos. For two points $P$ and $Q$ in the plane, $(P Q)$ and $P(Q)$ denote the circle with diameter $P Q$ and the circle with center $P$ passing through $Q$ respectively. For a circle $\delta, O_{\delta}$ denotes its center. For two points $P$ and $Q$ on the line $A B$, let $\alpha=(A P)$, $\beta=(B Q)$ and $\gamma=(A B)$. Let $O$ be the point of intersection of $A B$ and the radical axis of the circles $\alpha$ and $\beta$ and let $u=|A B|, s=|A Q| / 2$ and $t=|B P| / 2$. Unless otherwise stated, we use a rectangular coordinate system with origin $O$ such that the points $A, B$ and $P$ have coordinates $(a, 0)$, $(b, 0)$ and $(p, 0)$ respectively with $a-b=u$. The configuration $(\alpha, \beta, \gamma)$ is called a collinear arbelos if the four points
lie in the order (i) $B, Q, P, A$ or (ii) $B, P, Q, A$, or (iii) $P, B$, $A, Q$. In each of the cases the configurations are explicitly denoted by (BQPA), (BPQA) and (PBAQ) respectively. In the case $P=Q=O,(\alpha, \beta, \gamma)$ gives an ordinary arbelos, and $(\alpha, \beta, \gamma)$ is called a tangent arbelos. Archimedean circles of the ordinary arbelos are generalized to the collinear arbelos $(\alpha, \beta, \gamma)$ as circles of radius $s t /(s+t)$, which we denote by $r_{\mathrm{A}}$ [3]. Circles of radius $r_{\mathrm{A}}$ are also called Archimedean circles of $(\alpha, \beta, \gamma)$. The radius is also expressed by
$r_{\mathrm{A}}=\frac{|A O||B P|}{2 u}=\frac{a|p-b|}{2 u}$.

## 3 Lamoenian circles of the collinear arbelos

A circle generating circles of radius $r_{\mathrm{A}}$ with $\gamma$ is also said to be Lamoenian for the collinear arbelos $(\alpha, \beta, \gamma)$. In this section we give a condition that a circle is Lamoenian. For a circle $\delta$ of radius $r$ and a point $T$, let us define

$$
\mathrm{r}(T, \delta)=\frac{\left|r^{2}-\left|T O_{\delta}\right|^{2}\right|}{2 r}
$$

which equals the radius of the generated circles by $T$ with $\delta$ by the Pythagorean theorem.

Theorem 1 Let $\delta$ be a circle of radius $r$ and let J, $H$ be points with J lying on $\delta$. The circle (HJ) generates circles of radius $s$ with $\delta$ if and only if
$\left|H O_{\delta}\right|^{2}=r(r \pm 4 s)$.
In this event, the following statements are true.
(i) If a points $K$ lies on the circle $O_{\delta}(H)$, the circle $(K J)$ generates circles of radius $s$ with $\delta$.
(ii) The point $O_{(H J)}$ lies on the circle of radius $r / 2$ with center $O_{\left(H O_{\delta}\right)}$.

Proof. Let $h=\left|H O_{\delta}\right|$ (see Figure 2). We use a rectangular coordinate system with origin $O_{\delta}$ such that the coordinates of $H$ is $(h, 0)$ in this proof. Let $(f, g)$ be the coordinates of the point $O_{(H J)}$, and let $T$ be one of the endpoints of the diameter of $(H J)$ perpendicular to $O_{\delta} O_{(H J)}$. Then $\overrightarrow{O_{(H J)} T}=k(-g, f)$ and $\overrightarrow{O_{\delta} T}=(f-k g, g+k f)$ for a real number $k$. From $\left|O_{(H J)} T\right|=\left|O_{(H J)} H\right|,(-k g)^{2}+(k f)^{2}=$ $(f-h)^{2}+g^{2}$, which implies
$k^{2}=\frac{(f-h)^{2}+g^{2}}{f^{2}+g^{2}}$.
The circle $(H J)$ generates circles of radius $s$ with $\delta$ if and only if

$$
\mathrm{r}(T, \delta)=\frac{\left|r^{2}-\left((f-k g)^{2}+(g+k f)^{2}\right)\right|}{2 r}=s
$$

Since (3) holds, the last equation is equivalent to

$$
\frac{1}{4} h^{2}+\left(f-\frac{h}{2}\right)^{2}+g^{2}=\frac{1}{2} r(r \pm 2 s)
$$

where the plus (resp. minus) sigh should be taken when $T$ lies outside (resp. inside) of $\delta$. If $(v, w)$ are the coordinates of the point $J,(v+h) / 2=f$ and $w / 2=g$. Therefore the last equation is equivalent to

$$
\frac{1}{4} h^{2}+\frac{1}{4} r^{2}=\frac{1}{2} r(r \pm 2 s)
$$

which is also equivalent to (2). The part (i) obviously holds. The center of $(H J)$ is the image of $J$ by the dilation with center $H$ and scale factor $1 / 2$. This proves (ii).


Figure 2
Let $\varepsilon$ be the circle with center $O_{\gamma}$ belonging to the pencil of circles determined by $\alpha$ and $\beta$ for the collinear arbelos $(\alpha, \beta, \gamma)$. We call $\varepsilon$ the radical circle of $(\alpha, \beta, \gamma)$. The circle is considered in [4] and [5] for (BQPA) and (BPQA). If $\alpha$ and $\beta$ have a point in common, $\varepsilon$ passes through the point. For (BQPA) let $V$ be the point of tangency of one of the tangents of $\alpha$ from $O$ (see Figure 3). Then $|O V|^{2}=a p$. If $\left|O O_{\gamma}\right|^{2}>a p$, a tangent from $O_{\gamma}$ to the circle $O(V)$ can be drawn. Then $\varepsilon$ passes through the point of tangency. If $\left|O O_{\gamma}\right|^{2}=a p, \varepsilon$ is the point circle $O_{\gamma}$, which coincides with one of the limiting points of the pencil. If $\left|O O_{\gamma}\right|^{2}<|a p|, \varepsilon$ does not exist. Let $e$ be the radius of $\varepsilon$. For (BQPA), $e^{2}=\left|O O_{\gamma}\right|^{2}-a p$ by the Pythagorean theorem. For (BPQA) and (PBAQ), $e^{2}=\left|O O_{\gamma}\right|^{2}+|a p|$ (see Figure 4). In any case
$e^{2}=\left|O O_{\gamma}\right|^{2}-a p$.


Figure 3: The case $\left|O_{\gamma} O\right|^{2}>|a p|$ for $(B Q P A)$


Figure 4: (PBAQ)

Theorem 2 For a collinear arbelos $(\alpha, \beta, \gamma)$ with radical circle $\varepsilon$, if points $J$ and $H$ lie on $\gamma$ and $\varepsilon$ respectively, then the circle $(H J)$ is Lamoenian.

Proof. For (BPQA) and (BQPA), $r_{\mathrm{A}}=a(p-b) /(2 u)$ by (1). Therefore by (4),

$$
\frac{u}{2}\left(\frac{u}{2}-4 r_{\mathrm{A}}\right)=\frac{(a-b)^{2}}{4}-a(p-b)=\frac{(a+b)^{2}}{4}-a p=e^{2}
$$

Similarly for (PBAQ), we get

$$
\frac{u}{2}\left(\frac{u}{2}+4 r_{\mathrm{A}}\right)=e^{2}
$$

Hence the theorem is proved by Theorem 1.

## 4 Quartet of circles

In this section we show that a Lamoenian circle given by Theorem 2 is a member of a set of four Lamoenian circles. All the suffixes are reduced modulo 4 in this section. Let $J_{0}$ be a point on a circle $\delta$, and let $H$ be a point which does not lie on $\delta$ (see Figures 5, 6). Let $R_{0} R_{1}$ be the diameter of the circle $\left(H J_{0}\right)$ perpendicular to the line $O_{\delta} O_{\left(H J_{0}\right)}$ and let $R_{0}$ and $R_{1}$ generate circles of radius $s$ with $\delta$. Let $J_{1}$ be the point of intersection of the line $J_{0} R_{1}$ and $\delta$, and let $R_{2}$ be the point such that $H R_{1} J_{1} R_{2}$ is a rectangle. Then the circle $\left(H J_{1}\right)$ also generates circles of radius $s$ with $\delta$ by Theorem 1. While $R_{1}$ generates circles of radius $s$ with $\delta$. Therefore $R_{2}$ also generates circles of radius $s$ with $\delta$. Similarly we construct the points $J_{2}$ and $J_{3}$ on $\delta$ and the points $R_{3}$ and $R_{4}$ such that $J_{2}$ and $J_{3}$ lie on the lines $J_{1} R_{2}$ and $J_{2} R_{3}$ respectively and $H R_{2} J_{2} R_{3}$ and $H R_{3} J_{3} R_{4}$ are rectangles. Then $R_{3}$ generates circles of radius $s$ with $\delta$ and $R_{4}$ coincides with $R_{0}$. Now we get the points $J_{i}$ on $\delta$ and $R_{i}(i=0,1,2,3)$ such that $R_{i} R_{i+1}$ is the diameter of $\left(H J_{i}\right), R_{i}$ generates circles of radius $s$ with $\delta, J_{0} J_{1} J_{2} J_{3}$ is a rectangle, $R_{i}$ lies on the line $J_{i} J_{i-1}$. The four circles $\left(H J_{i}\right)(i=0,1,2,3)$ are called a quartet on $\delta$, and $H$ and $J_{0} J_{1} J_{2} J_{3}$ are called the base point and the rectangle of the quartet respectively.


Figure 5: $H$ lies inside of $\delta$


Figure 6: $H$ lies outside of $\delta$

By the definition of $R_{i}, R_{0}, R_{2}, H$ are collinear, also $R_{1}$, $R_{3}, H$ are collinear, and the two lines are perpendicular. Let $l_{i}=\left|H R_{i}\right|$. Then $\left|H J_{0}\right|^{2}+\left|H J_{2}\right|^{2}=l_{0}^{2}+l_{1}^{2}+l_{2}^{2}+l_{3}^{2}=$ $\left|H J_{1}\right|^{2}+\left|H J_{3}\right|^{2}$. Therefore $\left|H J_{0}\right|^{2}+\left|H J_{2}\right|^{2}=\left|H J_{1}\right|^{2}+$ $\left|H J_{3}\right|^{2}$ holds.


Figure 7: A quartet of Lamoenian circles on $\varepsilon$ for (PBAQ)

For a collinear arbelos $(\alpha, \beta, \gamma)$ with radical circle $\varepsilon$, if the two points $H$ and $J_{0}$ lie on $\varepsilon$ and $\gamma$ respectively, we can construct a quartet $\left(H J_{i}\right)(i=0,1,2,3)$ on $\gamma$ consisting of Lamoenian circles by Theorem 2. Also if $H$ and $J_{0}$ lie on $\gamma$ and $\varepsilon$ respectively, we can construct a quartet $\left(H J_{i}\right)$ ( $i=0,1,2,3$ ) on $\varepsilon$ consisting of Lamoenian circles (see Figure 7).

Theorem 3 For a quartet $\left(H J_{i}\right)(i=0,1,2,3)$ on a circle $\delta$, the rectangle is a square if and only if $\left(H J_{i}\right)$ touches $\delta$ for some $i$. In this event, $\left(H J_{i+2}\right)$ also touches $\delta$, and $\left(H J_{i-1}\right)$ and $\left(H J_{i+1}\right)$ are congruent and intersect at $O_{\delta}$.

Proof: If $\left(H J_{0}\right)$ touches $\delta, R_{0} J_{0} R_{1}$ is an isosceles right triangle, since $\left|O_{\delta} R_{0}\right|=\left|O_{\delta} R_{1}\right|$. This implies that $J_{3} J_{0} J_{1}$ is also an isosceles right triangle, i.e., $J_{0} J_{1} J_{2} J_{3}$ is a square. Conversely let us assume $J_{0} J_{1} J_{2} J_{3}$ is a square. We assume that $\left(H J_{i}\right)$ does not touch $\delta$ for $i=0,1,2,3$. The sides or the extended sides of the square and the circle $O_{\delta}\left(R_{0}\right)$ intersect at eight points, four of which are $R_{0}, R_{1}$, $R_{2}, R_{3}$. If $\left|J_{i} R_{i}\right|=\left|J_{i} R_{i+1}\right|,\left(H J_{i}\right)$ touches $\delta$. Therefore $\left|J_{i} R_{i}\right| \neq\left|J_{i} R_{i+1}\right|$ for $i=0,1,2,3$. This can happen only when $R_{1}, R_{2}, R_{3}, R_{4}$ lie inside of $\delta$ (see Figures 8 and 9). Hence $\left|J_{0} R_{0}\right|=\left|J_{1} R_{1}\right|=\left|J_{2} R_{2}\right|=\left|J_{3} R_{3}\right| \neq\left|J_{0} R_{1}\right|=$ $\left|J_{1} R_{2}\right|=\left|J_{2} R_{3}\right|=\left|J_{3} R_{0}\right|$. Therefore the four rectangles $H R_{i} J_{i} R_{i+1}(i=0,1,2,3)$ are congruent. Then they must be squares, since $H$ is their common vertex. But this implies $\left|J_{i} R_{i}\right|=\left|J_{i} R_{i+1}\right|$, a contradiction. Hence $\left(H J_{i}\right)$ touches $\delta$ for some $i$. Then $H$ lies on $J_{i} J_{i+2}$. Therefore $\left(H J_{i+2}\right)$ also touches $\delta$. While $J_{i-1} J_{i+1}$ and $H O_{\delta}$ are perpendicular and intersect at $O_{\delta}$. Therefore $\left(H J_{i-1}\right)$ and $\left(H J_{i+1}\right)$ are congruent and pass through $O_{\delta}$.


Figure 8


Figure 9

## 5 Special cases

We conclude this article by considering the tangent arbelos $(\alpha, \beta, \gamma)$ with $O=P=Q$. Since $\varepsilon=O_{\gamma}(O)$, Power's result mentioned in the introduction is restated as both $\alpha$ and $\beta$ are Lamoenian. Figure 10 shows a quartet on $\gamma$ with base point $O$ with $J_{0}=A$, in which $\alpha$ and $\beta$ are members of the quartet. Figure 11 shows a quartet on $\varepsilon$ with base point $A$ with $J_{0}=O$. In this figure $\alpha$ and the reflected image of $\beta$ in $O_{\gamma}$ are members of the quartet. In each of the cases, the rectangle is a square.


Figure 10: A quartet on $\gamma$ with base point $O$


Figure 11: A quartet on $\varepsilon$ with base point $A$

Let $\mathcal{L}$ be the radical axis of $\alpha$ and $\beta$. Quang Tuan Bui has found that the points of intersection of the circles $\left(A O_{\beta}\right)$ and $\left(B O_{\alpha}\right)$ lie on $\mathcal{L}$ and generate Archimedean circles with $\gamma$ for the tangent arbelos $(\alpha, \beta, \gamma)[1]$. Let $R_{1}$ be one of the points of intersection, and let the line parallel to $A B$ passing through $R_{1}$ intersect $\gamma$ at a point $K$, where $K$ lies on


Figure 12: A quartet on $\gamma$ with base point $O$

## References

[1] Q. T. Bui, The arbelos and nine-point circles, Forum Geom. 7 (2007), 115-120.
[2] F. van Lamoen, Some Powerian pairs in the arbelos, Forum Geom. 7 (2007), 111-113.
[3] H. Okumura, Ubiquitous Archimedean circles of the collinear arbelos, $K o G 16$ (2012), 17-20.
[4] H. Okumura and M. Watanabe, Generalized arbelos in aliquot part: non-intersecting case, J. Geom. Graph. 13 (2009), No.1, 41-57.
the same side of $\mathcal{L}$ as $A$. Figure 12 shows a quartet on $\gamma$ with base point $O$ with $J_{0}=K$. In this figure $R_{0}$ and $R_{2}$ lie on $A B$ while $R_{3}$ lies on $\mathcal{L}$. Figure 13 shows a quartet on $\varepsilon$ with base point $K$ with $J_{0}=O$. In this figure, $R_{1} J_{0}$ touches $\varepsilon$ at $O$. Therefore $J_{1}=J_{0}=O$, i.e., the rectangle degenerates into a segment, and the quartet consists of two different Lamoenian circles.


Figure 13: A quartet on $\varepsilon$ with base point $K$
[5] H. Okumura and M. Watanabe, Generalized arbelos in aliquot part: intersecting case, J. Geom. Graph. 12 (2008), No.1, 53-62.
[6] F. Power, Some more Archimedean circles in the Arbelos, Forum Geom. 5 (2005), 133-134.

## Hiroshi Okumura

e-mail: hiroshiokmr@gmail.com
251 Moo 15 Ban Kesorn Tambol Sila
Amphur Muang Khonkaen 40000, Thailand

# The Parabola in Universal Hyperbolic Geometry I 

## The Parabola in Universal Hyperbolic Geometry I

## ABSTRACT

We introduce a novel definition of a parabola into the framework of universal hyperbolic geometry, show many analogs with the Euclidean theory, and also some remarkable new features. The main technique is to establish parabolic standard coordinates in which the parabola has the form $x z=y^{2}$. Highlights include the discovery of the twin parabola and the connection with sydpoints, many unexpected concurrences and collinearities, a construction for the evolute, and the determination of (up to) four points on the parabola whose normals meet.

Key words: universal hyperbolic geometry, parabola
MSC2010: 51M10, 14N99, 51E99

## 1 Introduction

This paper begins the study of the parabola in universal hyperbolic geometry $(U H G)$. The framework is that of [16], [17], [18], [19] and [20]; a completely algebraic and more general formulation of hyperbolic geometry which extends to general fields (not of characteristic two), and also unifies elliptic and hyperbolic geometries. We will see that this investigation opens up many new phenomenon, and hints again at the inexhaustible beauty of conic sections!

In Euclidean geometry, the parabola plays several distinguished roles. It is the graph resulting from a quadratic function $f(x)=a+b x+c x^{2}$, and so familiar as the second degree Taylor expansion of a general function. The parabola is also a conic section in the spirit of Apollonius, obtained by slicing a cone with a plane which is parallel to one of the generators of the cone. In affine geometry the parabola is the distinguished conic which is tangent to the line at infinity. In everyday life, the parabola occurs in reflecting mirrors and automobile head lamps, in satellite dishes and radio telescopes, and in the trajectories of comets.


#### Abstract

Parabola u univerzalnoj hiperboličkoj geometriji I SAŽETAK

Uvodimo novu definiciju parabole u okvir univerzalne hiperboličke geometrije, pokazujemo mnoge analogone s euklidskom geometrijom, ali i neka izvanredna nova svojstva. Osnovna je tehnika uspostavljanje paraboličnih standardnih koordinata u kojima parabola ima jednadžbu oblika $x z=y^{2}$. Ističemo otkriće parabole blizanke, vezu sa sidtočkama, mnoge neočekivane konkurentnosti i kolinearnosti, konstrukciju evolute te određivanje (do najviše) četiriju točaka parabole u kojima normale parabole prolaze jednom točkom.


Ključne riječi: univerzalna hiperbolička geometrija, parabola

Of course the ancient Greeks also studied the familiar metrical formulation of a parabola: it is the locus of a point which remains equidistant from a fixed point $F$, called the focus, and a fixed line $f$, called the directrix. (We have a good reason for using the same letters for both concepts, with only case separating them). Such a conic $\mathcal{P}$ has a line of symmetry: the axis a through $F$ perpendicular to $f$. It also has a distinguished point $V$ called the vertex, which is the only point of the parabola lying on the axis $a$, aside from the point at infinity. The vertex $V$ is the midpoint between the focus $F$ and the base point $B \equiv a f$.

For such a classical parabola $\mathcal{P}$ hundreds of facts are known, see [1], [4], [5], [8], [10], [13], [14]; quite a few of them going back to Archimedes and Apollonius, others added in more recent centuries. Of particular importance are theorems that relate to an arbitrary point $P$ on the conic and its tangent line $p$. In particular the construction of $p$ itself is important: there are two common ways of doing this. One is to take the foot $T$ of the altitude from $P$ to the directrix $f$, and connect $P$ to the midpoint $M$ of $\overline{T F}$; so that $p=P M$. Another is to take the perpendicular line $t$ to $P F$ through $F$, and find its meet $S$ with the directrix; this gives $p=P S$. The point $S$ is equidistant from $T$ and $F$, and the
circle $\mathcal{S}$ with center $S$ through $F$ is tangent to both the lines $P F$ and $P T$.
A related and useful fact is that a chord $P N$ is a focal chord-meaning that it passes through $F$-precisely when the meet of the two tangents at $P$ and $N$ lies on the directrix $f$, and in this case the two tangents are perpendicular. These facts are illustrated in Figure 1. Another result, which figures often in calculus, is that if $P$ and $Q$ are arbitrary points on the parabola with $Z$ the meet of their tangents $p$ and $q$, and $T, U$ and $W$ are the feet of the altitudes from $P, Q$ and $Z$ to the directrix, then $W$ is the midpoint of $\overline{T U}$.


Figure 1: The Euclidean Parabola
So when we investigate hyperbolic geometry, some natural questions are: what is the analog of a parabola in this context, what properties of the Euclidean case carry over in this setting, and what additional properties might the hyperbolic parabola have that do not hold in the Euclidean case? These issues have been studied by several authors, such as [2], [15], [9].
In this paper we answer these questions in a new and more general way, using the wider framework of UHG, and allowing the beginnings of a much deeper investigation. There is a very natural analog of a parabola in this hyperbolic setting, and many, but certainly not all, properties of the Euclidean parabola hold or have reasonable analogs for it. But there are many interesting aspects which have no Euclidean counterpart, such as the existence of a dual or twin parabola, and an intimate connection with the theory of sydpoints, as laid out in [20].
The outline of the paper is as follows. We first give a very brief review of universal hyperbolic geometry, where the algebraic notions of quadrance and spread replace the more traditional transcendental measurements of distance and angle. We then define the parabola in the hyperbolic setting (we often refer simply to the hyperbolic parabola), give a dynamic geometry package construction for it, introduce some basic points associated to it, and use some of these and the Fundamental theorem of Projective Geometry to define standard coordinates, in which the parabola
has the convenient equation $x z=y^{2}$. This allows a simple parametrization for the curve, as well as pleasant explicit formulas for many interesting points, lines, conics and higher degree curves associated to it.
In our study of the basic points and lines associated with the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$, concrete and explicit formulae are key objectives, because they allow us a firm foundation for deeper investigations. The main thrust of the paper is then to show how the hyperbolic parabola shares many similarities with the Euclidean parabola. The highlights include the duality leading to the twin parabola, a straightedge construction of the evolute of the parabola, and a conic construction of four points on the parabola whose normals pass through a fixed point (in the Euclidean case there are at most three points with this property).
This paper is the first of a series on the hyperbolic parabola. In future papers we will show that there are many new and completely unexpected aspects of the hyperbolic parabola; it is a very rich topic indeed.

### 1.1 A brief review of universal hyperbolic geometry

We work over a fixed field, not of characteristic two, and give a formulation of universal hyperbolic geometry valid with a general symmetric bilinear form-this generality will be important for us when we introduce parabolic standard coordinates. This is only a quick introduction; the reader may consult [17], [18], [19], [20] for more details. A (projective) point is a proportion $a=[x: y: z]$ in square brackets, or equivalently a projective row vector $a=$ $\left[\begin{array}{lll}x & y & z\end{array}\right]$ (unchanged if multiplied by a non-zero number). A (projective) line is a proportion $L=\langle l: m: n\rangle$ in pointed brackets, or equivalently a projective column vector
$L=\left[\begin{array}{l}l \\ m \\ n\end{array}\right]$.
The incidence between the point $a=[x: y: z]$ and the line $L=\langle l: m: n\rangle$ is given by the relation $a L=l x+m y+n z=$ 0 . The join of points is defined by

$$
\begin{align*}
a_{1} a_{2} & \equiv\left[x_{1}: y_{1}: z_{1}\right] \times\left[x_{2}: y_{2}: z_{2}\right] \\
& \equiv\left\langle y_{1} z_{2}-y_{2} z_{1}: z_{1} x_{2}-z_{2} x_{1}: x_{1} y_{2}-x_{2} y_{1}\right\rangle \tag{1}
\end{align*}
$$

while the meet $L_{1} L_{2}$ of lines $L_{1} \equiv\left\langle l_{1}: m_{1}: n_{1}\right\rangle$ and $L_{2} \equiv$ $\left\langle l_{2}: m_{2}: n_{2}\right\rangle$ is similarly defined by

$$
\begin{align*}
L_{1} L_{2} & \equiv\left\langle l_{1}: m_{1}: n_{1}\right\rangle \times\left\langle l_{2}: m_{2}: n_{2}\right\rangle \\
& \equiv\left[m_{1} n_{2}-m_{2} n_{1}: n_{1} l_{2}-n_{2} l_{1}: l_{1} m_{2}-l_{2} m_{1}\right] \tag{2}
\end{align*}
$$

Collinearity of three points $a_{1}, a_{2}, a_{3}$ will here be represented by the abbreviation $\left[\left[a_{1} a_{2} a_{3}\right]\right]$, and similarly the concurrency of three lines $L_{1}, L_{2}, L_{3}$ will be abbreviated [ $\left.\left[L_{1} L_{2} L_{3}\right]\right]$. These are determinantal conditions.

The metrical structure is given by a (non-degenerate) $3 \times 3$ projective symmetric matrix $\mathbf{C}$ and its adjugate $\mathbf{D}$ (where bold signifies a projective matrix- determined only up to a non-zero multiple). The points $a_{1}$ and $a_{2}$ are perpendicular precisely when $a_{1} \mathbf{C} a_{2}^{T}=0$, written $a_{1} \perp a_{2}$, while lines $L_{1}$ and $L_{2}$ are perpendicular precisely when $L_{1}^{T} \mathbf{D} L_{2}=0$, written $L_{1} \perp L_{2}$. The point $a$ and the line $L$ are dual precisely when $L=a^{\perp} \equiv \mathbf{C} a^{T}$, or equivalently $a=L^{\perp} \equiv L^{T} \mathbf{D}$, so that points are perpendicular precisely when one is incident with the dual of the other, and similarly for two lines. A point $a$ is null precisely when it is perpendicular to itself, that is, when $a \mathbf{C} a^{T}=0$, while a line $L$ is null precisely when it is perpendicular to itself, that is, when $L^{T} \mathbf{D} L=0$. The null points determine the null conic, sometimes also called the absolute.
Universal Hyperbolic geometry in the Cayley Klein model arises from the special case
$\mathbf{C}=\mathbf{D}=\mathbf{J} \equiv\left[\begin{array}{ccc}1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1\end{array}\right]$.

In this framework the point $a=[x: y: z]$ is null precisely when $x^{2}+y^{2}-z^{2}=0$, and dually the line $L=\langle l: m: n\rangle$ is null precisely when $l^{2}+m^{2}-n^{2}=0$. So we can picture the null circle in affine coordinates $X \equiv x / z$ and $Y \equiv y / z$ as the (blue) circle $X^{2}+Y^{2}=1$. The quadrance $q$ between points and the spread $S$ between lines are then given by essentially the same formulas:

$$
\begin{align*}
& q\left(\left[x_{1}: y_{1}: z_{1}\right],\left[x_{2}: y_{2}: z_{2}\right]\right) \\
& \quad=1-\frac{\left(x_{1} x_{2}+y_{1} y_{2}-z_{1} z_{2}\right)^{2}}{\left(x_{1}^{2}+y_{1}^{2}-z_{1}^{2}\right)\left(x_{2}^{2}+y_{2}^{2}-z_{2}^{2}\right)} \\
& S\left(\left\langle l_{1}: m_{1}: n_{1}\right\rangle,\left\langle l_{2}: m_{2}: m_{2}\right\rangle\right)  \tag{4}\\
& \quad=1-\frac{\left(l_{1} l_{2}+m_{1} m_{2}-n_{1} n_{2}\right)^{2}}{\left(l_{1}^{2}+m_{1}^{2}-n_{1}^{2}\right)\left(l_{2}^{2}+m_{2}^{2}-n_{2}^{2}\right)} .
\end{align*}
$$

The figures in this paper are generated in this model, with however the outside of the null circle playing just as big a role as the inside-this takes some getting used to for the classical hyperbolic geometer! In addition, it will be necessary for us to adopt a more general and flexible approach to deal with projective changes of coordinates, which will be needed to study the parabola in what we call standard coordinates.
So more generally, the bilinear forms determined by a general $3 \times 3$ projective symmetric matrix $\mathbf{C}$ and its adjugate $\mathbf{D}$ can be used to define the dual notions of (projective) quadrance $q\left(a_{1}, a_{2}\right)$ between points $a_{1}$ and $a_{2}$, and (projective) spread $S\left(L_{1}, L_{2}\right)$ between lines $L_{1}$ and
$L_{2}$ as
$q\left(a_{1}, a_{2}\right) \equiv 1-\frac{\left(a_{1} \mathbf{C} a_{2}^{T}\right)^{2}}{\left(a_{1} \mathbf{C} a_{1}^{T}\right)\left(a_{2} \mathbf{C} a_{2}^{T}\right)} \quad$ and
$S\left(L_{1}, L_{2}\right) \equiv 1-\frac{\left(L_{1}^{T} \mathbf{D} L_{2}\right)^{2}}{\left(L_{1}^{T} \mathbf{D} L_{1}\right)\left(L_{2}^{T} \mathbf{D} L_{2}\right)}$.
While the numerators and denominators of these expressions depend on choices of representative vectors and matrices for $a_{1}, a_{2}, \mathbf{C}, L_{1}, L_{2}$ and $\mathbf{D}$, (which are by definition defined only up to scalars), the overall expressions are well-defined projectively.
It follows that $q(a, a)=0$ and $S(L, L)=0$, while $q\left(a_{1}, a_{2}\right)=1$ precisely when $a_{1} \perp a_{2}$, and dually $S\left(L_{1}, L_{2}\right)=1$ precisely when $L_{1} \perp L_{2}$. Also quadrance and spread are naturally dual:
$S\left(a_{1}^{\perp}, a_{2}^{\perp}\right)=q\left(a_{1}, a_{2}\right)$.
In [16], it was shown that both these metrical notions can also be reformulated projectively and rationally using suitable cross ratios (and no transcendental functions!) To connect with the more familiar distance between points $d\left(a_{1}, a_{2}\right)$, and angle between lines $\theta\left(L_{1}, L_{2}\right)$ in the Klein projective model: when we restrict to points and lines inside the null circle,
$q\left(a_{1}, a_{2}\right)=-\sinh ^{2}\left(d\left(a_{1}, a_{2}\right)\right) \quad$ and
$S\left(L_{1}, L_{2}\right)=\sin ^{2}\left(\theta\left(L_{1}, L_{2}\right)\right)$.
For a triangle $\overline{a_{1} a_{2} a_{3}}$ with associated trilateral $\overline{L_{1} L_{2} L_{3}}$, we define $q_{1} \equiv q\left(a_{2}, a_{3}\right), q_{2} \equiv q\left(a_{1}, a_{3}\right)$ and $q_{3} \equiv q\left(a_{1}, a_{2}\right)$, and $S_{1} \equiv S\left(L_{2}, L_{3}\right), S_{2} \equiv S\left(L_{1}, L_{3}\right)$ and $S_{3} \equiv S\left(L_{1}, L_{2}\right)$. The main trigonometric laws in the subject can be restated in terms of these quantities (see UHG I [17]).

## 2 The parabola and its construction

In this section we introduce definitions and some basic results for a parabola in universal hyperbolic geometry. We will work and illustrate the theory in the familiar CayleyKlein setting with our null circle/absolute the unit circle in the plane. The situation is in some sense richer than in the Euclidean setting because of duality: whenever we define an important point $x$, its dual line $X=x^{\perp}$ is also likely to be important, and vice versa. We remind the reader that we will consistently employ small letters for points and capital letters for lines, with the convention that if $x_{i}$ is a point, then $X_{i}=x_{i}^{\perp}$ is the corresponding dual line and conversely. So what is a parabola in the hyperbolic setting? As already discussed in [9], the definition is not obvious: there are several different possible ways of trying to generalize the Euclidean theory. Recall that if $a$ is a point and $L$ is a line, then the quadrance $q(a, L)$ is defined to be the quadrance between $a$ and the foot $t$ of the altitude line from $a$ to $L$.


Figure 2: A parabola $\mathscr{P}_{0}$ with foci $f_{1}$ and $f_{2}$
Definition 1 Suppose that $f_{1}$ and $f_{2}$ are two nonperpendicular points such that $f_{1} f_{2}$ is a non-null line. The parabola $\mathscr{P}_{0}$ with foci $f_{1}$ and $f_{2}$ is the locus of a point $p_{0}$ satisfying
$q\left(f_{1}, p_{0}\right)+q\left(p_{0}, f_{2}\right)=1$.
The lines $F_{1} \equiv f_{1}^{\perp}$ and $F_{2} \equiv f_{2}^{\perp}$ are the directrices of the parabola $\mathscr{P}_{0}$.

This definition is likely surprising to the classical geometer. In Euclidean geometry, such a relation defines a circle, so at this point it is not clear what justification we have for our definition of a parabola. The following connects our theory with the more traditional approach in [11] and [7].

Theorem 1 (Parabola focus directrix) The point $p_{0}$ satisfies (6) precisely when either of the following hold:
$q\left(f_{1}, p_{0}\right)=q\left(p_{0}, F_{2}\right) \quad$ or $\quad q\left(f_{2}, p_{0}\right)=q\left(p_{0}, F_{1}\right)$.
Proof. If $\left(f_{1} p_{0}\right) F_{1} \equiv t_{1}$ and $\left(f_{2} p_{0}\right) F_{2} \equiv t_{2}$ are the feet of the altitudes from a point $p_{0}$ on the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ with foci $f_{1}$ and $f_{2}$ to the directrices $F_{1}$ and $F_{2}$, then $f_{1}$ and $t_{1}$ are perpendicular points, as are $f_{2}$ and $t_{2}$. It follows that $q\left(f_{1}, p_{0}\right)+q\left(p_{0}, t_{1}\right)=1$ and $q\left(f_{2}, p_{0}\right)+q\left(p_{0}, t_{2}\right)=1$. But then (6) is equivalent to $q\left(f_{1}, p_{0}\right)=q\left(p_{0}, F_{2}\right)$ or to $q\left(f_{2}, p_{0}\right)=q\left(p_{0}, F_{1}\right)$.

In this way we recover the ancient Greek metrical definition of the parabola, but we note now that there are two foci-directrix pairs: $\left(f_{1}, F_{2}\right)$ and $\left(f_{2}, F_{1}\right)$. This is a main feature of the hyperbolic theory of the parabola: a fundamental symmetry between the two foci-directrix pairs. The reason for the index 0 on the point $p_{0}$ and the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ will become clearer when we introduce the twin parabola $\mathbb{P}^{0}$. We observe that the foci $f_{1}$ and $f_{2}$ do not lie on the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$, since for example if $f_{1}$ lies on $\mathcal{P}_{0}$, then $q\left(f_{1}, f_{1}\right)+q\left(f_{2}, f_{1}\right)=1$, which would imply that
$q\left(f_{1}, f_{2}\right)=1$, contradicting that the assumption of nonperpendicularity of $f_{1}$ and $f_{2}$. In Figure 2 we see an example of a parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$, in red, with foci $f_{1}$ and $f_{2}$, and directrices $F_{1}$ and $F_{2}$, also in red.


Figure 3: Various examples of parabolas
In Figure 3 we see some different examples of parabolas over the rational numbers, at least approximately. When the foci $f_{1}$ and $f_{2}$ are both interior points of the null circle $\mathcal{C}$, there is no point $p$ satisfying the condition $q\left(p, f_{1}\right)+$ $q\left(p, f_{2}\right)=1$, since the quadrance between any two interior points is always negative, and the quadrance between an interior point and an exterior point is greater than or equal to 1 . This paper deals with non-empty parabolas, by extending the field if necessary, as we shall see.

Theorem 2 (Parabola conic) The parabola $\mathscr{P}_{0}$ with foci $f_{1}$ and $f_{2}$ is a conic.

Proof. Suppose that $f_{1}=\left[x_{1}: y_{1}: z_{1}\right]$ and $f_{2}=\left[x_{2}: y_{2}: z_{2}\right]$. Then the point $p=[x: y: z]$ lies on $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ precisely when

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left(1-\frac{\left(x x_{1}+y y_{1}-z z_{1}\right)^{2}}{\left(x^{2}+y^{2}-z^{2}\right)\left(x_{1}^{2}+y_{1}^{2}-z_{1}^{2}\right)}\right) \\
& \quad+\left(1-\frac{\left(x x_{2}+y y_{2}-z z_{2}\right)^{2}}{\left(x^{2}+y^{2}-z^{2}\right)\left(x_{2}^{2}+y_{2}^{2}-z_{2}^{2}\right)}\right)=1
\end{aligned}
$$

which yields the quadratic equation

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left(x^{2}+y^{2}-z^{2}\right)\left(x_{1}^{2}+y_{1}^{2}-z_{1}^{2}\right)\left(x_{2}^{2}+y_{2}^{2}-z_{2}^{2}\right) \\
& =\left(x x_{1}+y y_{1}-z z_{1}\right)^{2}\left(x_{2}^{2}+y_{2}^{2}-z_{2}^{2}\right) \\
& \quad+\left(x x_{2}+y y_{2}-z z_{2}\right)^{2}\left(x_{1}^{2}+y_{1}^{2}-z_{1}^{2}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

### 2.1 Basic definitions

We now define some basic points and lines associated to a parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ with foci $f_{1}$ and $f_{2}$, and directrices $F_{1} \equiv f_{1}^{\perp}$
and $F_{2} \equiv f_{2}^{\perp}$. The axis of the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ is the line $A \equiv f_{1} f_{2}$. The axis point of $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ is the dual point $a \equiv A^{\perp}$. By assumption the axis $A$ is a non-null line, so that $a$ does not lie on $A$.
If the axis $A$ has null points, we shall call these the axis null points of $\mathscr{P}_{0}$, and denote them by $\eta_{1}$ and $\eta_{2}$, in no particular order. The axis point and line will generally be in black in our diagrams, while the axis null points will be in yellow.


Figure 4: Dual and tangent lines, twin point and focal lines

Theorem 3 The axis $A=f_{1} f_{2}$ of a hyperbolic parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ is a line of symmetry, and its dual point a is a center.

Proof. We denote the reflection of an arbitrary point $p_{0}$ lying on $\mathscr{P}_{0}$ in the axis line $A$ by $r_{A}\left(p_{0}\right)=\overline{p_{0}}$. Then we need to prove that $\overline{p_{0}}$ also lies on $\mathcal{P}_{0}$. Recall that the hyperbolic reflection in a line (or equivalently the reflection in the dual point of that line) is an isometry, so for any two points $a$ and $b$,
$q(a, b)=q\left(r_{A}(a), r_{A}(b)\right)$.
Thus, since $f_{1}, f_{2}$ are fixed by $r_{A}$ (they lie on $A$ ),

$$
\begin{aligned}
1 & =q\left(f_{1}, p_{0}\right)+q\left(f_{2}, p_{0}\right) \\
& =q\left(r_{A}\left(p_{0}\right), r_{A}\left(f_{1}\right)\right)+q\left(r_{A}\left(p_{0}\right), r_{A}\left(f_{1}\right)\right) \\
& =q\left(\overline{p_{0}}, f_{1}\right)+q\left(\overline{p_{0}}, f_{2}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

This shows that $\overline{p_{0}}$ lies on the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$. Since reflecting $p_{0}$ in $A$ is the same as reflecting $p_{0}$ in $a$, the point $a$ is also the center of the parabola.

The base points of $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ are the points $b_{1} \equiv A F_{1}$ and $b_{2} \equiv$ $A F_{2}$. The dual lines $B_{1} \equiv a f_{1}$ and $B_{2} \equiv a f_{2}$ are the base lines of $\mathcal{P}_{0}$. Both base points and base lines will be shown in blue in our diagrams.
The vertices $v_{1}$ and $v_{2}$ are the points, if they exist, where the parabola meets the axis; they are in no particular order. The duals of the vertices are the vertex lines $V_{1} \equiv v_{1}^{\perp}$ and $V_{2} \equiv v_{2}^{\perp}$. The vertices and vertex lines will be shown in black.

A generic point on $\mathscr{P}_{0}$ will be denoted $p_{0}$, and its dual line denoted $P_{0}$. Both are shown in black in our diagrams, with often a small circle drawn around $p_{0}$ to highlight it. The tangent line to $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ at $p_{0}$ will be denoted $P^{0}$, and its dual point $p^{0}$ will be called the twin point of $p_{0}$. Both $p^{0}$ and $P^{0}$ will be shown in grey.
The focal lines of $p_{0}$ are $R_{1} \equiv p_{0} f_{1}$ and $R_{2} \equiv p_{0} f_{2}$, and the altitude base points of $p_{0}$ are $t_{1} \equiv R_{1} F_{1}$ and $t_{2} \equiv R_{2} F_{2}$. The duals of the focal lines are the focal points $r_{1} \equiv R_{1}^{\perp}$ and $r_{2} \equiv R_{2}^{\perp}$ of $p_{0}$. The duals of the focal base points are the altitude base lines $T_{1} \equiv t_{1}^{\perp}$ and $T_{2} \equiv t_{2}^{\perp}$ of $p_{0}$. The focal lines and points will be shown in green in our diagrams. Figure 4 shows these various basic points and lines associated to the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$.

### 2.2 Construction with a dynamic geometry program

It is helpful to have a construction of a hyperbolic parabola that can be used with a dynamic geometry package, such as Geometer's Sketchpad, GeoGebra, C.a.R., Cinderella, Cabri etc., used to create loci. For this it is helpful to refresh our minds about the construction of the Euclidean parabola, because a similar technique applies to construct a hyperbolic parabola. We also mention some related facts that will have analogs in the hyperbolic setting.
Firstly, we choose a point $F$ (focus), and a line $f$ (directrix), not passing through $F$. Draw the perpendicular line $a$ (axis) to $F$ through $f$. Using an arbitrary point $T$ on the directrix $f$, construct the midpoint $M$ of the side $\overline{T F}$, and draw the perpendicular line $p$ to $T F$ through $M$. Finally, the intersection of the altitude $r$ to $f$ through $T$ and the line $p$ is a point $P$ on the parabola $P$, which is then the locus of the point $P$ as $T$ moves on $f$, as in Figure 1.


Figure 5: Construction of a hyperbolic parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$
To construct a hyperbolic parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ from a pair of foci $f_{1}$ and $f_{2}$ with axis $A$, we proceed as in the Euclidean case, but we must be aware that the existence of midpoints is more subtle-they may not exist, and when they do, there are generally two of them! The situation is illustrated in Figure 5; choose a point $t_{1}$ on the directrix $F_{1} \equiv f_{1}^{\perp}$ with
the property that the side $\overline{t_{1} f_{2}}$ has midpoints, call them $m^{1}$ and $p^{0}$, with corresponding midlines $M^{1}=\left(m^{1}\right)^{\perp}$ and $P^{0}=\left(p^{0}\right)^{\perp}$. One way of choosing such a point $t_{1}$ is to first choose an arbitrary point $a_{1}$ on $F_{1}$ and then reflect $b_{1} \equiv F_{1} A$ in $a_{1}$ to obtain $t_{1}$. In the triangle $\overline{b_{1} t_{1} f_{2}}$, two sides now have midpoints, so by Menelaus' theorem ([17]) the third side $\overline{t_{1} f_{2}}$ will also have midpoints.
Now construct the meets $p_{0} \equiv P^{0} R_{1}$ and $n_{1} \equiv M^{1} R_{1}$, where $R_{1}=t_{1} f_{1}$. Then $p_{0}$ and $n_{1}$ will both be points on the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$. The Figure also shows the symmetry available here: it is equally possible to choose a point $t_{2}$ on the other directrix $F_{2} \equiv f_{2}^{\perp}$ with the property that the side $\overline{t_{2} f_{1}}$ has midpoints, call them $m^{2}$ and $p^{0}$, with corresponding midlines $M^{2}=\left(m^{2}\right)^{\perp}$ and $P^{0}=\left(p^{0}\right)^{\perp}$. In that case the points $p_{0} \equiv P^{0} R_{2}$ and $n_{2} \equiv M^{2} R_{2}$, where $R_{2}=t_{2} f_{2}$, lie on the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$. In Figure 5, the two points $t_{1}$ and $t_{2}$ are related by the fact that $t_{1} t_{2}$ meets the axis $A$ at the same point $j^{0}$ as does $P^{0}$; this accounts for the fact that $\overline{t_{1} f_{2}}$ and $\overline{t_{2} f_{1}}$ have a common midpoint $p^{0}$.

The justification for this construction will be given later, after we establish a suitable framework for coordinates and derive formulas for all the relevant points.

### 2.3 Dual conics and the connection with sydpoints

The theory of the hyperbolic parabola connects strongly with the notion of sydpoints as developed in [20].
The reason is that the sydpoints $f^{1}$ and $f^{2}$ of the side $\overline{f_{1} f_{2}}$, should they exist (and our assumptions on our field will guarantee that they do) are naturally determined by the geometry of $\mathcal{P}_{0}$, and then they become the foci for the twin parabola $P^{0}$ (in orange in our diagrams), which turns out to be the dual of the conic $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ with respect to the null circle $\mathcal{C}$. The sydpoint symmetry between the sides $\overline{f_{1} f_{2}}$ and $\overline{f^{1} f^{2}}$ is key to understanding many aspects of these conics. Although we will be studying the twin parabola more in the next paper in this series, it will be useful to be aware of it, as it explains some of our notational conventions.

In Figure 6, we see the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ with foci $f_{1}, f_{2}$ and a point $p_{0}$ on it, as well as the twin parabola $\mathbb{P}^{0}$ with foci $f^{1}, f^{2}$ and the twin point $p^{0}$ on it, which is the dual of the tangent $P^{0}$ to $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ at $p_{0}$. Reciprocally the dual of $p_{0}$ is the tangent to $P^{0}$ at $p^{0}$. Note carefully that the tangents to both the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ and the null circle $\mathcal{C}$ at their common meets, namely the null points $\alpha_{0}$ and $\overline{\alpha_{0}}$, pass through the foci of the twin parabola $\mathcal{P}^{0}$. Dually, note that the tangents to both the parabola $P^{0}$ and the null circle $C$ at their common meets, namely the null points $\delta_{0}$ and $\overline{\delta_{0}}$, pass through the foci of $\mathcal{P}_{0}$. This Figure also shows the twin directrices $F^{1}$ and $F^{2}$, and the twin base points $b^{1}$ and $b^{2}$.


Figure 6: The parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ and its twin $\mathcal{P}^{0}$

## 3 Standard Coordinates and duality

### 3.1 The four basis null points

In order to bring a systematic treatment to the study of the hyperbolic parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$, we need an appropriate coordinate system to bring $P_{0}$ into as simple a form as possible. Although there is a great deal of choice for such an attempt, the one that we present here is the simplest and most elegant we could find; in it the beauty of the parabolic theory is reflected in an elegance and coherence in the corresponding formulae.
The key point is that aside from the two foci $f_{1}$ and $f_{2}$ which we used to define the parabola, there are four other points which naturally lie on the parabola and which can be used effectively as a basis for projective coordinates: the two vertices $v_{1}$ and $v_{2}$, together with two null points $\alpha_{0}$ and $\overline{\alpha_{0}}$ which are symmetrically placed with respect to the axis.
We need to say some words about the existence of four such points. A priori there is no guarantee that the axis $A$ meets the parabola; it will do so when the corresponding quadratic equation formed by meeting the line with the conic has a solution. The existence of the vertices is then an assumption that we may justify by adjoining an algebraic square root, if required, to our field.
We will use the four points $v_{1}, v_{2}, \alpha_{0}$ and $\overline{\alpha_{0}}$, no three which are collinear, as a basis of a new projective coordinate system.

Theorem 4 (Parabola vertices) If there is a non-null point $v_{1}$ lying both on the axis $A$ and the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$, then the perpendicular point $v_{2} \equiv v_{1}^{\perp}$ A also lies on both the axis and the parabola, and these then are the only two points with this property.

Proof. Suppose that $v_{1}$ lies on the axis $A \equiv f_{1} f_{2}$ and on the parabola. Then if $v_{1}$ is not a null point,
$q\left(f_{1}, v_{1}\right)+q\left(v_{1}, f_{2}\right)=1$.
Define $v_{2} \equiv v_{1}^{\perp} A$, so that $q\left(v_{1}, v_{2}\right)=1$. Now recall that if $a, b$ and $c$ are collinear points with $q(a, b)=1$, then $q(a, c)+q(c, b)=1$. So $q\left(v_{1}, f_{1}\right)+q\left(f_{1}, v_{2}\right)=1$ and $q\left(v_{1}, f_{2}\right)+q\left(f_{2}, v_{2}\right)=1$. Combining all three equations we see that $q\left(f_{1}, v_{2}\right)+q\left(v_{2}, f_{2}\right)=1$, showing that $v_{2}$ also lies on the parabola. Since a line meets a conic at most at two points, there can be no other points on the axis and on $\mathcal{P}_{0}$.

We can see from Figure 3 that a parabola need not necessarily meet its axis. However any given line will meet a given conic if we are allowed to augment the field to an appropriate quadratic extension. So by possibly extending our field, we will henceforth assume that our parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ meets the axis $A=f_{1} f_{2}$. By the above theorem, it then meets this axis in exactly two points, which we call the vertices of the parabola, and denote by $v_{1}$ and $v_{2}$.
What about the existence of null points on $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ ? The meet of any two conics might have from zero to four points.


Figure 7: The four basis points $v_{1}, v_{2}, \alpha_{0}$ and $\overline{\alpha_{0}}$
The parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ with foci $f_{1}$ and $f_{2}$ need not meet the null conic $C$. However for most examples, especially those of interest to a classical geometer working in the Klein model in the interior of the unit disk, we do have such an intersection-at least approximately over the rational numbers. So by possibly extending our field to a quartic extension, we will henceforth assume that our parabola $P_{0}$ passes through at least one null point $\alpha_{0}$. By the assumption in the previous theorem such a null point $\alpha_{0}$ cannot lie on the axis, so if we reflect it in the axis we get a second null point $\overline{\alpha_{0}} \equiv r_{a}\left(\alpha_{0}\right)$ which also lies on $\mathcal{P}_{0}$, since $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ is invariant under $r_{a}$. Clearly no three of the four basis points $v_{1}, v_{2}, \alpha_{0}$ and $\overline{\alpha_{0}}$ are collinear, since they all lie on the parabola.

### 3.2 The Fundamental theorem and standard coordinates

We now invoke the Fundamental Theorem of Projective Geometry, which allows us to make a unique projective change of coordinates so that the four basis points become
$v_{1}=[0: 0: 1] \quad v_{2}=[1: 0: 0]$
$\alpha_{0}=[1: 1: 1] \quad \overline{\alpha_{0}}=[1:-1: 1]$.
It follows that
$A=v_{1} v_{2}=[0: 0: 1] \times[1: 0: 0]=\langle 0: 1: 0\rangle$.
These new coordinates will be called standard coordinates for the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$, or parabolic standard coordinates. Note carefully that the introduction of such new coordinates will necessarily change the form of the quadrance and spread!
We now define, as in Figure 7, the points obtained by reflecting $\alpha_{0}$ and $\overline{\alpha_{0}}$ in $v_{2}$ : namely
$\beta_{0} \equiv r_{v_{2}}\left(\alpha_{0}\right) \quad$ and $\quad \overline{\beta_{0}} \equiv r_{\nu_{2}}\left(\overline{\alpha_{0}}\right)$.
Because reflection is an isometry, these are also null points. Our notation with the overbar is something we will employ consistently: $\alpha_{0}$ and $\overline{\alpha_{0}}$ are reflections in the point $a$, or equivalently in the dual line $A$, and so similarly for $\beta_{0}$ and $\overline{\beta_{0}}$.
Theorem 5 ( $\beta$ points) We have $\beta_{0}=\left(\alpha_{0} v_{2}\right)\left(\overline{\alpha_{0}} v_{1}\right)$ and $\overline{\beta_{0}}=\left(\overline{\alpha_{0}} v_{2}\right)\left(\alpha_{0} v_{1}\right)$. Furthermore in the new coordinate system $\beta_{0}=[-1: 1: 1]$ and $\overline{\beta_{0}}=[-1:-1: 1]$.
Proof. The quadrangle of null points $\alpha_{0} \overline{\alpha_{0}} \beta_{0} \overline{\beta_{0}}$ has one diagonal point $v_{2}$, obviously from the definition of $\beta_{0}$ and $\overline{\beta_{0}}$. It has another diagonal point $a$, because both $\alpha_{0} \overline{\alpha_{0}}$ and $\beta_{0} \overline{\beta_{0}}$ pass it; the first by construction and the second because it is obtained from the first by reflection in $v_{2}$, which lies on $A=a^{\perp}$. So the third diagonal point is the dual of $a v_{2}$, which is $v_{1}$ by the previous theorem. It follows that $\beta_{0}=\left(\alpha_{0} v_{2}\right)\left(\overline{\alpha_{0}} v_{1}\right)$ and $\overline{\beta_{0}}=\left(\overline{\alpha_{0}} v_{2}\right)\left(\alpha_{0} v_{1}\right)$. Now we can calculate that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\beta_{0} & =([1: 1: 1] \times[1: 0: 0]) \times([1:-1: 1] \times[0: 0: 1]) \\
& =\langle 0: 1:-1\rangle \times\langle 1: 1: 0\rangle=[-1: 1: 1] \\
\overline{\beta_{0}} & =([1:-1: 1] \times[1: 0: 0]) \times([1: 1: 1] \times[0: 0: 1]) \\
& =\langle 0: 1: 1\rangle \times\langle 1:-1: 0\rangle=[-1:-1: 1] .
\end{aligned}
$$

When we apply a general projective transformation of the projective plane to get the four points $v_{1}, v_{2}, \alpha_{0}$ and $\overline{\alpha_{0}}$ into standard position, the metrical structure will change. While we started with the symmetric matrix $J$ for the form, the new symmetric matrix is of the form $\mathbf{C}=M J M^{T}$ for some invertible matrix $M$. However this matrix $\mathbf{C}$ is not arbitrary; since we require that the four points lie on the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$. We now arrive at the crucial result which sets
up our coordinate system, and is the basis for all subsequent calculations. This is the fact that the new matrix $\mathbf{C}$, and its adjugate $\mathbf{D}$, have a particularly simple form, depending on a single parameter $\alpha$ which subsequently appears in almost all our formulas.

Theorem 6 (Parabola standard coordinates) The symmetric bilinear form in standard coordinates is given by $v_{1} \odot v_{2}=v_{1} \mathbf{C} v_{2}^{T}$ where
$\mathbf{C}=\left[\begin{array}{ccc}\alpha^{2} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1-\alpha^{2} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1\end{array}\right] \quad$ and
$\mathbf{D}=\operatorname{adj}(\mathbf{C})=\left[\begin{array}{ccc}\alpha^{2}-1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -\alpha^{2} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \alpha^{2}\left(1-\alpha^{2}\right)\end{array}\right]$
for some number $\alpha$. In terms of $\alpha$, the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ has equation $x z-y^{2}=0$ and its foci are
$f_{1}=[\alpha+1: 0: \alpha(\alpha-1)]$ and $f_{2}=[1-\alpha: 0: \alpha(\alpha+1)]$.
Proof. Suppose that our new bilinear form in standard coordinates is given by $v_{1} \odot v_{2}=v_{1} \mathbf{C} v_{2}^{T}$ where
$\mathbf{C}=\left[\begin{array}{lll}a & d & f \\ d & b & g \\ f & g & c\end{array}\right] \quad$ and
$\mathbf{D}=\operatorname{adj}(\mathbf{C})=\left[\begin{array}{lll}b c-g^{2} & f g-c d & d g-b f \\ f g-c d & a c-f^{2} & d f-a g \\ d g-b f & d f-a g & a b-d^{2}\end{array}\right]$.
The fact that the four points $\alpha_{0}=[1: 1: 1], \overline{\alpha_{0}}=$ $[1:-1: 1], \beta_{0}=[-1: 1: 1]$ and $\overline{\beta_{0}}=[-1:-1: 1]$ must all be null points means
$\alpha_{0} \mathbf{C} \alpha_{0}^{T}=\overline{\alpha_{0}} \mathbf{C}\left(\overline{\alpha_{0}}\right)^{T}=\beta_{0} \mathbf{C} \beta_{0}^{T}=\overline{\beta_{0}} \mathbf{C}\left(\overline{\beta_{0}}\right)^{T}=0$.
These conditions lead to the following linear system of equations involving the entries of $\mathbf{C}$ :
$a+b+c+2 d+2 f+2 g=0$
$a+b+c-2 d+2 f-2 g=0$
$a+b+c-2 d-2 f+2 g=0$
$a+b+c+2 d-2 f-2 g=0$.
From this we deduce that $d=f=g=0$, and $a=-(b+c)$.
So the matrices have the form, up to scaling, of:
$\mathbf{C}=\left[\begin{array}{ccc}a & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1-a & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1\end{array}\right]$ and
$\mathbf{D}=\left[\begin{array}{ccc}a-1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -a & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -a(a-1)\end{array}\right]$.

But there is also the condition that $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ is a parabola with foci $f_{1}$ and $f_{2}$, passing through all four basis points $v_{1}=[0: 0: 1], v_{2}=[1: 0: 0], \alpha_{0}=[1: 1: 1]$ and $\overline{\alpha_{0}}=$ $[1:-1: 1]$. Since the foci lie on the axis $A=v_{1} v_{2}$, we can write $f_{1}=\left[m_{1}: 0: 1\right]$ and $f_{2}=\left[m_{2}: 0: 1\right]$ for some $m_{1}, m_{2}$. Then recall that the quadrance and spread are determined by the projective matrices $\mathbf{C}$ and $\mathbf{D}$ by the rules (5). We then compute

$$
\begin{aligned}
q\left(f_{1}, f_{2}\right) & =1-\frac{\left(a m_{1} m_{2}-1\right)^{2}}{\left(a m_{1}^{2}-1\right)\left(a m_{2}^{2}-1\right)} \\
& =-a \frac{\left(m_{1}-m_{2}\right)^{2}}{\left(a m_{2}^{2}-1\right)\left(a m_{1}^{2}-1\right)}
\end{aligned}
$$

Since $f_{1}$ and $f_{2}$ are by assumption not perpendicular,
$a m_{1} m_{2}-1 \neq 0$.
Also $v_{1}$ and $v_{2}$ lie on $\mathcal{P}_{0}$, so that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& q\left(\left[m_{1}: 0: 1\right],[0: 0: 1]\right)+q\left(\left[m_{2}: 0: 1\right],[0: 0: 1]\right)-1 \\
& \quad=\frac{\left(a m_{1} m_{2}-1\right)\left(a m_{1} m_{2}+1\right)}{\left(a m_{2}^{2}-1\right)\left(a m_{1}^{2}-1\right)}=0 \quad \text { and } \\
& q\left(\left[m_{1}: 0: 1\right],[1: 0: 0]\right)+q\left(\left[m_{2}: 0: 1\right],[1: 0: 0]\right)-1 \\
& \quad=-\frac{\left(a m_{1} m_{2}-1\right)\left(a m_{1} m_{2}+1\right)}{\left(a m_{1}^{2}-1\right)\left(a m_{2}^{2}-1\right)}=0 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Both these conditions, given (8), are equivalent to the relation
$a m_{1} m_{2}+1=0$
which we henceforth assume, implying that we may write
$m_{1}=m \quad$ and $\quad m_{2}=-\frac{1}{a m}$
for some non-zero number $m$.
In addition we must ensure that $\alpha_{0}$ and $\overline{\alpha_{0}}$ lie on $\mathcal{P}_{0}$, but since these are both null points, the quadrances $q\left(f_{1}, \alpha_{0}\right)$ and $q\left(f_{2}, \alpha_{0}\right)$ etc. are undefined, and we must rather work with the general equation of the parabola. This is

$$
\begin{aligned}
& q([m: 0: 1],[x: y: z])+q\left(\left[-\frac{1}{a m}: 0: 1\right],[x: y: z]\right)-1 \\
& \quad=\frac{4 a m x z-y^{2}(a-1)\left(a m^{2}-1\right)}{\left(a m^{2}-1\right)\left(a x^{2}-a y^{2}+y^{2}-z^{2}\right)}=0
\end{aligned}
$$

which shows the equation of the parabola to be
$4 a m x z-y^{2}(a-1)\left(a m^{2}-1\right)=0$.
Now the condition that $\alpha_{0}=[1: 1: 1]$ and $\overline{\alpha_{0}}=[1:-1: 1]$ lie on $\mathscr{P}_{0}$ is that

$$
\begin{align*}
4 a m-(a-1)\left(a m^{2}-1\right) & =a(1-a) m^{2}+4 a m+(a-1) \\
& =0 \tag{11}
\end{align*}
$$

Given that we started out with the existence of $f_{1}$ and $f_{2}$ assumed, we see that the discriminant of this quadratic equation
$(4 a)^{2}-4 a(1-a)(a-1)=4 a(a+1)^{2}$
must be a square. But this occurs precisely when $a$ is a square, say
$a=\alpha^{2}$.

In this case the quadratic equation (11) has the form $\alpha^{2}\left(1-\alpha^{2}\right) m^{2}+4 \alpha^{2} m+\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)=0$ with solutions
$m=m_{1}=\frac{1+\alpha}{\alpha(\alpha-1)} \quad$ and $\quad m_{2}=\frac{1-\alpha}{\alpha(\alpha+1)}$.

Combining these with (10), the identity

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 4 \alpha^{2} \frac{(\alpha+1)}{\alpha(\alpha-1)} x z-y^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(\alpha^{2}\left(\frac{1+\alpha}{\alpha(\alpha-1)}\right)^{2}-1\right) \\
& \quad=\frac{4\left(x z-y^{2}\right) \alpha(\alpha+1)}{\alpha-1}=0
\end{aligned}
$$

shows that the equation of the parabola pleasantly simplifies to be
$x z-y^{2}=0$.

The foci may now be expressed as
$f_{1}=\left[m_{1}: 0: 1\right]=[\alpha+1: 0: \alpha(\alpha-1)] \quad$ and
$f_{2}=\left[m_{2}: 0: 1\right]=[1-\alpha: 0: \alpha(\alpha+1)]$.

Notice that
$\operatorname{det}\left[\begin{array}{ccc}\alpha^{2} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1-\alpha^{2} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1\end{array}\right]=\alpha^{2}(\alpha-1)(\alpha+1) \neq 0$
so $\alpha \neq 0, \pm 1$, since $\mathbf{C}$ is an invertible projective matrix.
The following Figure shows a view in the standard coordinate plane, where $[x: y: 1]$ is represented by the affine point $[x, y]$. This corresponds roughly to a value of $\alpha=0.3$. While it is both interesting and instructive to see different views of such a standard coordinate plane, this is somewhat unfamiliar to the classical geometer, so we will stick mostly to the Universal Hyperbolic Geometry model for our diagrams, where the unit circle always appears in blue as the unit circle $x^{2}+y^{2}=1$.


Figure 8: A standard coordinate view of a parabola
Theorem 7 (Parabola quadrance) The quadrance of the parabola is
$q_{\mathcal{P}_{0}} \equiv q\left(f_{1}, f_{2}\right)=\frac{\left(\alpha^{2}+1\right)^{2}}{4 \alpha^{2}}$.
Proof. We compute that

$$
\begin{aligned}
q_{\mathscr{P}_{0}} & =q([\alpha+1: 0: \alpha(\alpha-1)],[1-\alpha: 0: \alpha(\alpha+1)]) \\
& =\frac{1}{4 \alpha^{2}}(\alpha-1)^{2}(\alpha+1)^{2}+1=\frac{\left(\alpha^{2}+1\right)^{2}}{4 \alpha^{2}}
\end{aligned}
$$

We note that $q_{\mathcal{P}_{0}}$ is a square. This is a reflection of the fact that the assumption of the existence of vertices implies that the sides $\overline{f_{1} b_{2}}$ and $\overline{f_{2} b_{1}}$ have midpoints, see the Midpoint theorem [17].
The condition for points and lines to be null, in other words the equation for the null circle, is the following in standard coordinates.

Theorem 8 (Null points/ lines) The point $p=[x: y: z]$ in standard coordinates is a null point precisely when
$\alpha^{2} x^{2}+\left(1-\alpha^{2}\right) y^{2}-z^{2}=0$.
The line $L=\langle l: m: n\rangle$ is a null line precisely when
$\left(1-\alpha^{2}\right) l^{2}+\alpha^{2} m^{2}+\alpha^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right) n^{2}=0$.
Proof. These follow by using (7) to expand the respective conditions
$[x: y: z] \mathbf{C}[x: y: z]^{T}=0 \quad$ and
$\langle l: m: n\rangle^{T} \mathbf{D}\langle l: m: n\rangle=0$.

### 3.3 Quadrance and spread in standard coordinates

We can now give explicit formulas for quadrance and spread in standard coordinates.

Theorem 9 (Quadrance formula) The quadrance between the points $p_{1}=\left[x_{1}: y_{1}: z_{1}\right]$ and $p_{2}=\left[x_{2}: y_{2}: z_{2}\right]$ in parabolic standard coordinates is
$q\left(p_{1}, p_{2}\right)=$
$-\frac{\left(x_{1} y_{2}-x_{2} y_{1}\right)^{2} \alpha^{4}+\left(\left(x_{1} z_{2}-x_{2} z_{1}\right)^{2}-\left(y_{1} z_{2}-y_{2} z_{1}\right)^{2}-\left(x_{1} y_{2}-x_{2} y_{1}\right)^{2}\right) \alpha^{2}+\left(y_{1} z_{2}-y_{2} z_{1}\right)^{2}}{\left(\alpha^{2} x_{1}^{2}-y_{1}^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)-z_{1}^{2}\right)\left(\alpha^{2} x_{2}^{2}-y_{2}^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)-z_{2}^{2}\right)}$.

Proof. From (4) and formula (7) for C,
$\left[x_{1}, y_{1}, z_{1}\right] \mathbf{C}\left[x_{2}, y_{2}, z_{2}\right]^{T}=\alpha^{2} x_{1} x_{2}-y_{1} y_{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)-z_{1} z_{2}$.
The formula follows using an identity calculation.
Theorem 10 (Spread formula) The spread between $L_{1}=$ $\left\langle l_{1}: m_{1}: n_{1}\right\rangle$ and $L_{2}=\left\langle l_{2}: m_{2}: n_{2}\right\rangle$ is
$S\left(L_{1}, L_{2}\right)$
$=\frac{\left(\left(l_{1} n_{2}-l_{2} n_{1}\right)^{2}-\left(m_{1} n_{2}-m_{2} n_{1}\right)^{2}\right) \alpha^{2}+\left(\left(l_{1} m_{2}-l_{2} m_{1}\right)^{2}-\left(l_{2} n_{1}-l_{1} n_{2}\right)^{2}\right)}{\left(l_{1}^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)-\alpha^{2} m_{1}^{2}-\alpha^{2} n_{1}^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)\right)\left(l_{2}^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)-\alpha^{2} m_{2}^{2}-\alpha^{2} n_{2}^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)\right)}$.
Proof. From (4) and

$$
\begin{aligned}
& {\left[l_{1}, m_{1}, n_{1}\right] \mathbf{D}\left[l_{2}, m_{2}, n_{2}\right]^{T}} \\
& \quad=l_{1} l_{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)-\alpha^{2} m_{1} m_{2}-\alpha^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right) n_{1} n_{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

the formula follows using an identity calculation.
Theorem 11 (Axis reflection) The reflection $r_{a}$ in the point a has the form
$r_{a}([x: y: z])=[x:-y: z]$.
Proof. We use the usual formula for reflection in a vector:
$r_{v}(u)=2 \frac{(u \cdot v) v}{v \cdot v}-u=2 \frac{\left(u C v^{T}\right) v}{v C v^{T}}-u$.
With the matrix $C$ above, and working with regular vectors, we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
r_{[0,1,0]}([x, y, z]) & =2 \frac{[0,1,0] C[x, y, z]^{T}}{[0,1,0] C[0,1,0]^{T}}[0,1,0]-[x, y, z] \\
& =[-x, y,-z]=[x,-y, z]
\end{aligned}
$$

### 3.4 Duality with respect to a conic and parametrizations

Let's recall some basic facts from the general theory of points and tangents to a projective conic. Suppose that a general conic $\mathcal{C}$ is given by the projective symmetric $3 \times 3$ matrix $\mathbf{A}$, with adjugate $\mathbf{B}$, so that a general point $p=[x: y: z]$ lies on $\mathcal{C}$ precisely when $p \mathbf{A} p^{T}=0$. The tangent line $P$ to a point $p$ lying on $\mathcal{C}$ is $P=p^{\perp} \equiv \mathbf{A} p^{T}$. Dually, the point at which a tangent line $L$ meets the conic is $l=L^{\perp} \equiv L^{T} \mathbf{B}$. While a point $p$ on the conic satisfies the equation $p \mathbf{A} p^{T}=0$, a line $L$ on the conic (that is, a tangent line to the conic at some point) satisfies the dual
equation $L^{T} \mathbf{B} L=0$ (where we regard lines as projective column vectors).
More generally, we can regard the projective matrix $\mathbf{A}$ as determining a projective bilinear form, which is equivalent to a duality between points and lines. For a general point $p$, not necessarily lying on $\mathcal{C}$, its dual with respect to $\mathcal{C}$ is the line $p^{\perp}=\mathbf{A} p^{T}$, while for a general point $L$, its dual with respect to $\mathcal{C}$ is the point $L^{\perp}=L^{T} \mathbf{B}$. These are inverse procedures.
These notions of course go back to Apollonius, and it could be argued that this duality between points and lines is the essential feature or characteristic of a conic. But this modern formulation in the language of linear algebra and matrices makes many of its aspects much easier to understand, see [3], [12].
In this work, the main example of duality is with respect to the null circle $\mathcal{C}$, for which we will stick with the notation that if $x_{j}$ is a point, then $X_{j}=\mathbf{C} x_{j}^{T}$ refers to the dual line and conversely. However the secondary duality with respect to the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ will also be involved, as we now see.
The equation (12) for the parabola $\mathscr{P}_{0}$ in standard coordinates, namely $p(x, y, z)=x z-y^{2}=0$, can be expressed in homogeneous matrix form as $p \mathbf{A} p^{T}=0$ or

$$
\left[\begin{array}{lll}
x & y & z
\end{array}\right] \mathbf{A}\left[\begin{array}{lll}
x & y & z
\end{array}\right]^{T}=0
$$

where
$\mathbf{A}=\left[\begin{array}{ccc}0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & -2 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0\end{array}\right] \quad$ and $\quad \operatorname{adj}(\mathbf{A}) \equiv \mathbf{B}=\left[\begin{array}{ccc}0 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & 0\end{array}\right]$.

Theorem 12 (Parabola parametrization) The parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ is parametrized, using an affine parameter $t$, by $p_{0}=$ $\left[t^{2}: t: 1\right] \equiv p(t)$ or by using a projective parameter $[t: r]$ as $p_{0}=\left[t^{2}: t r: r^{2}\right] \equiv p(t: r)$. The tangent line $P^{0}$ to the parabola at $p_{0}=\left[t^{2}: t: 1\right]$ is $P^{0}=\left\langle 1:-2 t: t^{2}\right\rangle \equiv P(t)$ or projectively the tangent to $p_{0}=\left[t^{2}: t r: r^{2}\right]$ is $P^{0}=$ $\left\langle r^{2}:-2 r t: t^{2}\right\rangle \equiv P(t: r)$. A line $L=\langle l: m: n\rangle$ is tangent to the parabola precisely when $m^{2}=4 n l$.

Proof. The simple form of the equation $x z=y^{2}$ makes the parametrization immediate. The formula for the tangent line is a direct application of the discussion above, so that

$$
\begin{aligned}
P^{0} \equiv \mathbf{A} p_{0}^{T} & =\left[\begin{array}{ccc}
0 & 0 & -1 \\
0 & 2 & 0 \\
-1 & 0 & 0
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{lll}
t^{2} & t & 1
\end{array}\right]^{T}=\left[\begin{array}{c}
1 \\
-2 t \\
t^{2}
\end{array}\right] \\
& =\left\langle 1:-2 t: t^{2}\right\rangle
\end{aligned}
$$

or using projective parameters

$$
\begin{aligned}
P^{0} \equiv \mathbf{A} p_{0}^{T} & =\left[\begin{array}{ccc}
0 & 0 & -1 \\
0 & 2 & 0 \\
-1 & 0 & 0
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{lll}
t^{2} & \operatorname{tr} & r^{2}
\end{array}\right]^{T}=\left[\begin{array}{c}
r^{2} \\
-2 r t \\
t^{2}
\end{array}\right] \\
& =\left\langle r^{2}:-2 r t: t^{2}\right\rangle .
\end{aligned}
$$

The relation $m^{2}=4 n l$ is exactly satisfied by those lines of this form.

Theorem 13 (Tangent meets) If $p_{0} \equiv p(t)$ and $q_{0} \equiv p(u)$ are two distinct points on $\mathcal{P}_{0}$, then their tangents $P^{0}$ and $Q^{0}$ meet at the polar point $z \equiv P^{0} Q^{0}=[2 t u: t+u: 2]$ while $Z \equiv p_{0} q_{0}=\langle 1:-(t+v): t v\rangle$.
Proof. We compute that
$z \equiv P^{0} Q^{0}=\left\langle 1:-2 t: t^{2}\right\rangle \times\left\langle 1:-2 u: u^{2}\right\rangle=[2 t u: t+u: 2]$
and
$p_{0} q_{0}=\left[t^{2}: t: 1\right] \times\left[v^{2}: v: 1\right]=\langle 1:-(t+v): t v\rangle$.
The projective parametrization of $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ has the advantage that it includes the important point at infinity $p(1: 0)=$ $[1: 0: 0]=v_{2}$. We can recover the affine parametrization by setting $r=1$, and we can go from the affine to the projective parametrization by replacing $t$ with $t / r$ and clearing denominators. In practice we will generally use the affine parametrization, since it is requires only one variable, not two. The existence of this simple parametrization will be extremely useful for us: giving us the same amount of control over the hyperbolic parabola as we have over the much simpler Euclidean parabola (which of course can be positioned to have exactly the same equation!)
Theorem 14 The dual of the point $p_{0}=\left[t^{2}: t: 1\right]$ on $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ is $P_{0}=\left\langle t^{2} \alpha^{2}: t\left(1-\alpha^{2}\right):-1\right\rangle$. The dual of the tangent line $P^{0}=\left\langle 1:-2 t: t^{2}\right\rangle$ is $p^{0}=$ $\left[\alpha^{2}-1: 2 t \alpha^{2}:-t^{2} \alpha^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)\right]$.

Proof. We compute that

$$
\begin{aligned}
P_{0} & =\mathbf{C} p_{0}^{T}=\left[\begin{array}{ccc}
\alpha^{2} & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1-\alpha^{2} & 0 \\
0 & 0 & -1
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{lll}
t^{2} & t & 1
\end{array}\right]^{T} \\
& =\left\langle t^{2} \alpha^{2}: t\left(1-\alpha^{2}\right):-1\right\rangle
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
p^{0} & =\left(P^{0}\right)^{T} \mathbf{D}=\left[\begin{array}{lll}
1 & -2 t & t^{2}
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{ccc}
\alpha^{2}-1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & -\alpha^{2} & 0 \\
0 & 0 & \alpha^{2}\left(1-\alpha^{2}\right)
\end{array}\right] \\
& =\left[\alpha^{2}-1: 2 t \alpha^{2}:-t^{2} \alpha^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)\right] .
\end{aligned}
$$

We will say that $p^{0}$ is the twin point to $p_{0}$. Later we will see that the locus of $p^{0}$ is also a parabola, whose foci $f^{1}$ and $f^{2}$ are the sydpoints of $\overline{f_{1} f_{2}}$.

Theorem 15 (Focus directrix polarity) The focus $f_{1}$ is the pole of the directrix $F_{2}$ with respect to the parabola $P_{0}$, and similarly the focus $f_{2}$ is the pole of the directrix $F_{1}$.

Proof. We check that
$F_{2}^{T} \mathbf{B}=\left[\begin{array}{lll}\alpha(\alpha-1) & 0 & \alpha+1\end{array}\right] \mathbf{B}=[\alpha+1: 0: \alpha(\alpha-1)]=f_{1}$ or
$\mathbf{A} f_{1}^{T}=\mathbf{A}\left[\begin{array}{lll}\alpha+1 & 0 & \alpha(\alpha-1)\end{array}\right]^{T}=\langle\alpha(\alpha-1): 0: \alpha+1\rangle=F_{2}$.
Similarly,
$F_{1}^{T} \mathbf{B}=\left[\begin{array}{lll}\alpha(\alpha+1) & 0 & 1-\alpha\end{array}\right] \mathbf{B}=[-(\alpha-1): 0: \alpha(\alpha+1)]=f_{2}$ or
$\mathbf{A} f_{2}^{T}=\mathbf{A}\left[\begin{array}{ccc}1-\alpha & 0 & \alpha(\alpha+1)\end{array}\right]^{T}=\langle\alpha(\alpha+1): 0: 1-\alpha\rangle=F_{1}$.

In order for the parabola $y^{2}=x z$ to have a null point $p(t)$, the parameter $t$ must satisfy $\left[t^{2}: t: 1\right] \mathbf{C}\left[t^{2}: t: 1\right]^{T}=0$, which yields $\left(t^{2}-1\right)\left(t^{2} \alpha^{2}+1\right)=0$. Over the rational field, the values $t= \pm 1$ agree with the null points $\alpha_{0}=$ $[1: 1: 1]$ and $\overline{\alpha_{0}}=[1:-1: 1]$ with which we begun our work.
However, there are also another two solutions which are invisible over the rational field, but exist in an extension field obtained by adjoining a square root $i$ of -1 . These points are $\zeta_{1} \equiv\left[1: i \alpha:-\alpha^{2}\right]$ and $\zeta_{2} \equiv\left[1:-i \alpha:-\alpha^{2}\right]$. In this paper we will not mention these points too much.

### 3.5 Formulas for directrices, vertex lines, base points and base lines

We can now augment our formulas using standard coordinates. The directrices are
$F_{1} \equiv f_{1}^{\perp}=\mathbf{C}[\alpha+1: 0: \alpha(\alpha-1)]^{T}=\langle\alpha(\alpha+1): 0: 1-\alpha\rangle$
$F_{2} \equiv f_{2}^{\perp}=\mathbf{C}[1-\alpha: 0: \alpha(\alpha+1)]^{T}=\langle\alpha(\alpha-1): 0: 1+\alpha\rangle$.
The base points are the meets of the directrices and the axis line. They are

$$
\begin{aligned}
b_{1} & \equiv F_{1} A=\left\langle\alpha^{2}(\alpha+1): 0: \alpha(1-\alpha)\right\rangle \times\langle 0: 1: 0\rangle \\
& =[\alpha-1: 0: \alpha(\alpha+1)] \\
b_{2} & \equiv F_{2} A=\left\langle\alpha^{2}(\alpha-1): 0: \alpha(1+\alpha)\right\rangle \times\langle 0: 1: 0\rangle \\
& =[\alpha+1: 0: \alpha(1-\alpha)] .
\end{aligned}
$$

The duals are the base lines $B_{1}, B_{2}$, which are the altitudes to the axis $A$ through the foci $f_{1}, f_{2}$ of the parabola:

$$
\begin{aligned}
B_{1} & \equiv b_{1}^{\perp}=\mathbf{C}[(\alpha-1): 0: \alpha(\alpha+1)] \\
& =\langle-\alpha(\alpha-1): 0: \alpha+1\rangle \\
B_{2} & \equiv b_{2}^{\perp}=\mathbf{C}[(\alpha+1): 0: \alpha(1-\alpha)] \\
& =\langle\alpha(\alpha+1): 0: \alpha-1\rangle .
\end{aligned}
$$

The vertex lines $V_{1}, V_{2}$ are the altitudes to the axis $A$ through the vertices $v_{1}, v_{2}$ of the parabola:
$V_{1} \equiv v_{1}^{\perp}=\mathbf{C}[0: 0: 1]=[0: 0: 1] \quad$ and
$V_{2} \equiv v_{2}^{\perp}=\mathbf{C}[1: 0: 0]=[1: 0: 0]$.


Figure 9: Some basic points associated to a parabola $\mathscr{P}_{0}$

### 3.6 The $j, h$ and $d$ points and lines

We define the axis null points to be the meets of the axis $A$ and the null conic $C$. These points exist under our assumptions, and are
$\eta_{1} \equiv A \mathcal{C}=[1: 0: \alpha] \quad$ and $\quad \eta_{2}=A \mathcal{C}=[-1: 0: \alpha]$.
We now introduce some other secondary points and lines associated to a generic point $p_{0}$ on the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$. The reflection of $p_{0}=\left[t^{2}: t: 1\right]$ in the axis is the opposite point
$\overline{p_{0}}=r_{a}\left(p_{0}\right)=\left[t^{2}:-t: 1\right]$.
Clearly $\overline{p_{0}}$ also lies on the parabola.
The meet of the dual line $P_{0}$ with the axis $A$ is the $j$-point
$j_{0} \equiv P_{0} A=\left\langle t^{2} \alpha^{2}: t\left(1-\alpha^{2}\right):-1\right\rangle \times\langle 0: 1: 0\rangle=\left[1: 0: t^{2} \alpha^{2}\right]$
with dual the $J$-line
$J_{0}=a p_{0}=[0: 1: 0] \times\left[t^{2}: t: 1\right]=\left\langle 1: 0:-t^{2}\right\rangle$.
By duality $J_{0}$ is the altitude from $p_{0}$ to the axis, and so also $J_{0}=p_{0} \overline{p_{0}}$. The meet of the $J$-line with the axis is the foot of this altitude; it is the $h$-point
$h_{0} \equiv A J_{0}=\langle 0: 1: 0\rangle \times\left\langle 1: 0:-t^{2}\right\rangle=\left[t^{2}: 0: 1\right]$
and its dual is the $H$-line
$H_{0} \equiv h_{0}^{\perp}=a j_{0}=[0: 1: 0] \times\left[1: 0: t^{2} \alpha^{2}\right]=\left\langle t^{2} \alpha^{2}: 0:-1\right\rangle$.
The meet of the tangent line $P^{0}$ with the axis is the twin $j$-point
$j^{0} \equiv P^{0} A=\left\langle 1:-2 t: t^{2}\right\rangle \times\langle 0: 1: 0\rangle=\left[-t^{2}: 0: 1\right]$
with dual the twin $J$-line

$$
J^{0}=a p^{0}=[0: 1: 0] \times\left[\alpha^{2}-1: 2 t \alpha^{2}:-t^{2} \alpha^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)\right]=\left\langle t^{2} \alpha^{2}: 0: 1\right\rangle .
$$

The meet of the twin $J$-line with the axis is the twin $h$ point
$h^{0} \equiv A J^{0}=\langle 0: 1: 0\rangle \times\left\langle t^{2} \alpha^{2}: 0: 1\right\rangle=\left[-1: 0: t^{2} \alpha^{2}\right]$ and its dual is the twin $H$-line
$H^{0} \equiv\left(h^{0}\right)^{\perp}=a j^{0}=[0: 1: 0] \times\left[-t^{2}: 0: 1\right]=\left\langle 1: 0: t^{2}\right\rangle$.


Figure 10: The $j$ and $h$ points and lines
Theorem 16 (Null tangent) The tangent $P^{0}$ to the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ at $p_{0}$ is a null line precisely when $p_{0}$ lies on a directrix, and in this case the twin point $p^{0}$ is a null point lying on the other directrix, $j_{0}$ coincides with a focus, and $j^{0}$ with the other focus.

Proof. If the tangent $P^{0}=\left\langle 1:-2 t: t^{2}\right\rangle$ at $p_{0}=\left[t^{2}: t: 1\right]$ is a null line, then by the Null points/lines theorem
$\left(1-\alpha^{2}\right)+4 \alpha^{2} t^{2}+\alpha^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right) t^{4}=0$.
This factors as

$$
\left(\alpha(\alpha+1) t^{2}-(\alpha-1)\right)\left(\alpha(\alpha-1) t^{2}+(\alpha+1)\right)=0
$$

so that
$t^{2}=\frac{\alpha-1}{\alpha(\alpha+1)} \quad$ or $\quad t^{2}=-\frac{\alpha+1}{\alpha(\alpha-1)}$.
Now $p_{0}=\left[t^{2}: t: 1\right]$ is on the directrix $F_{1}$ or $F_{2}$, precisely when

$$
\begin{aligned}
& {\left[t^{2}: t: 1\right]\left[\alpha^{2}(\alpha+1): 0: \alpha(1-\alpha)\right]^{T}=0 \quad \text { or }} \\
& {\left[t^{2}: t: 1\right]\left[\alpha^{2}(\alpha-1): 0: \alpha(1+\alpha)\right]^{T}=0}
\end{aligned}
$$

and similarly, the point $p^{0}=\left[\alpha^{2}-1: 2 t \alpha^{2}:-t^{2} \alpha^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)\right]$ is on the directrix $F_{1}$ or $F_{2}$, precisely when
$\left[\alpha^{2}-1: 2 t \alpha^{2}:-t^{2} \alpha^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)\right]\left[\alpha^{2}(\alpha+1): 0: \alpha(1-\alpha)\right]^{T}=0$ or
$\left[\alpha^{2}-1: 2 t \alpha^{2}:-t^{2} \alpha^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)\right]\left[\alpha^{2}(\alpha-1): 0: \alpha(1+\alpha)\right]^{T}=0$.
These conditions are exactly the same as (13). Using (13) we get either $j_{0}=\left[1: 0: t^{2} \alpha^{2}\right]=[\alpha+1: 0: \alpha(\alpha-1)]=$ $f_{1}$ and $j^{0}=\left[-t^{2}: 0: 1\right]=[1-\alpha: 0: \alpha(\alpha+1)]=$ $f_{2}$ or $j_{0}=[1-\alpha: 0: \alpha(\alpha+1)]=f_{2} \quad$ and $j^{0}=$ $[\alpha+1: 0: \alpha(\alpha-1)]=f_{1}$.


Figure 11: Null tangents and $d_{0}, \overline{d_{0}}$ points
We introduce the points $d_{0}$ and $\overline{d_{0}}$ to be the meets of the directrix $F_{2}$ with the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$, should they exist, and the corresponding twin null points $\delta_{0}$ and $\overline{\delta_{0}}$ lying on the directrix $F_{1}$. These are important canonical points associated with the parabola. Since their existence requires solutions to (13), and so a number $\tau$ satisfying $\tau^{2}=\alpha\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)$, we may write
$d_{0}=F_{2} \mathcal{P}_{0}=[\alpha-1: \tau: \alpha(\alpha+1)]$
$\overline{d_{0}}=F_{2} P_{0}=[\alpha-1:-\tau: \alpha(\alpha+1)]$
and
$d^{0} \equiv \delta_{0}=\left[(\alpha-1)^{2}(\alpha+1):-2 \alpha i \tau: \alpha(\alpha+1)^{2}(\alpha-1)\right]$
$\overline{d_{0}}=\overline{\delta_{0}}=\left[(\alpha-1)^{2}(\alpha+1): 2 \alpha i \tau: \alpha(\alpha+1)^{2}(\alpha-1)\right]$
where $(i \tau)^{2}=-\alpha\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)$.
In Figure 11, notice that the lines $f_{1} \delta_{0}$ and $f_{1} \overline{\delta_{0}}$ are joint tangents to both $\mathcal{C}$ and the parabola $\mathscr{P}_{0}$, touching $\mathscr{P}_{0}$ at the points $d_{0}$ and $\overline{d_{0}}$.

### 3.7 The sydpoints of a parabola

It is a remarkable fact that the theory of sydpoints that we developed in [20] plays a crucial role in the theory of the
parabola. Define the lines
$F^{2} \equiv \alpha_{0} \overline{\alpha_{0}}=[1: 1: 1] \times[1:-1: 1]=\langle 1: 0:-1\rangle$
$B^{1} \equiv \beta_{0} \overline{\beta_{0}}=[-1: 1: 1] \times[-1:-1: 1]=\langle 1: 0: 1\rangle$
with corresponding axis meets
$b^{2} \equiv F^{2} A=\langle 1: 0:-1\rangle \times\langle 0: 1: 0\rangle=[1: 0: 1]$
$f^{1} \equiv B^{1} A=\langle 1: 0: 1\rangle \times\langle 0: 1: 0\rangle=[-1: 0: 1]$.
The duals of these points and lines are
$f^{2} \equiv\left(F^{2}\right)^{\perp}=\left[\begin{array}{lll}1 & 0 & -1\end{array}\right] \mathbf{D}=\left[1: 0: \alpha^{2}\right]$
$b^{1} \equiv\left(B^{1}\right)^{\perp}=\left[\begin{array}{lll}1 & 0 & 1\end{array}\right] \mathbf{D}=\left[1: 0:-\alpha^{2}\right]$
$B^{2} \equiv\left(b^{2}\right)^{\perp}=\mathbf{C}\left[\begin{array}{lll}1 & 0 & 1\end{array}\right]^{T}=\left\langle-\alpha^{2}: 0: 1\right\rangle$
$F^{1} \equiv\left(f^{1}\right)^{\perp}=\mathbf{C}\left[\begin{array}{lll}-1 & 0 & 1\end{array}\right]^{T}=\left\langle\alpha^{2}: 0: 1\right\rangle$.
The points $f^{1}$ and $f^{2}$ are the twin foci, or $\mathbf{t}$-foci for short, of the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$. They will play a major role in the theory. The dual lines of $f^{1}$ and $f^{2}$, namely $F^{1}$ and $F^{2}$ respectively, are the $\mathbf{t}$-directrices of $\mathcal{P}_{0}$. The meets of the t-directrices and the axis $A$ are $F^{1} A \equiv b^{1}$ and $F^{2} A \equiv b^{2}$ respectively; these are the t-base points of $\mathscr{P}_{0}$. The dual lines of $b^{1}$ and $b^{2}$, namely $B^{1}$ and $B^{2}$ respectively, are the t-base lines of $\mathcal{P}$. These are all shown in Figure 12.


Figure 12: Sydpoints and the twin foci $f^{1}$ and $f^{2}$ of $\mathcal{P}_{0}$
Theorem 17 (Parabola sydpoints) The points $f^{1}$ and $f^{2}$ are the sydpoints of the side $\overline{f_{1} f_{2}}$.

Proof. We calculate that

$$
\begin{aligned}
q\left(f_{1}, f^{1}\right) & =q([\alpha+1: 0: \alpha(\alpha-1)],[1: 0:-1]) \\
& =1+\frac{\left(\alpha(\alpha-1)+\alpha^{2}(\alpha+1)\right)^{2}}{4 \alpha^{3}-4 \alpha^{5}}=-\frac{\left(\alpha^{2}+1\right)^{2}}{4 \alpha\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)} \\
q\left(f_{2}, f^{1}\right) & =q([1-\alpha: 0: \alpha(\alpha+1)],[1: 0:-1]) \\
& =1-\frac{\left(\alpha(\alpha+1)-\alpha^{2}(\alpha-1)\right)^{2}}{4 \alpha^{3}-4 \alpha^{5}}=\frac{\left(\alpha^{2}+1\right)^{2}}{4 \alpha\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
q\left(f_{1}, f^{2}\right) & =q\left([\alpha+1: 0: \alpha(\alpha-1)],\left[1: 0: \alpha^{2}\right]\right) \\
& =1-\frac{\left(\alpha^{2}(\alpha+1)-\alpha^{3}(\alpha-1)\right)^{2}}{4 \alpha^{5}-4 \alpha^{7}}=\frac{1}{4} \frac{\left(\alpha^{2}+1\right)^{2}}{\alpha\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)} \\
q\left(f_{2}, f^{2}\right) & =q\left([1-\alpha: 0: \alpha(\alpha+1)],\left[1: 0: \alpha^{2}\right]\right) \\
& =1+\frac{\left(\alpha^{2}(\alpha-1)+\alpha^{3}(\alpha+1)\right)^{2}}{4 \alpha^{5}-4 \alpha^{7}}=-\frac{1}{4} \frac{\left(\alpha^{2}+1\right)^{2}}{\alpha\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)}
\end{aligned}
$$

Clearly $\quad q\left(f_{1}, f^{1}\right)=-q\left(f_{2}, f^{1}\right)$ and $q\left(f_{1}, f^{2}\right)=$ $\frac{-q}{f_{1} f_{2}}\left(f_{2}, f^{2}\right)$ so $f^{1}$ and $f^{2}$ are the sydpoints of the side $\overline{f_{1} f_{2}}$.

Theorem 18 (Parabola null tangents) The tangents to the null circle at $\alpha_{0}$ and $\overline{\alpha_{0}}$ meet at $f^{2}$. The tangents to $P_{0}$ at $\alpha_{0}$ and $\overline{\alpha_{0}}$ meet at $f^{1}$.

Proof. The tangents to the null circle at $\alpha_{0}$ and $\overline{\alpha_{0}}$ are the dual lines

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \alpha_{0}^{\perp}=C[1: 1: 1]^{T}=\left\langle\alpha^{2}: 1-\alpha^{2}:-1\right\rangle \quad \text { and } \\
& \left(\overline{\alpha_{0}}\right)^{\perp}=C[1:-1: 1]^{T}=\left\langle\alpha^{2}: \alpha^{2}-1:-1\right\rangle
\end{aligned}
$$

and these meet at

$$
\begin{aligned}
\alpha_{0}^{\perp}\left(\overline{\alpha_{0}}\right)^{\perp} & =\left\langle\alpha^{2}: 1-\alpha^{2}:-1\right\rangle \times\left\langle\alpha^{2}: \alpha^{2}-1:-1\right\rangle \\
& =\left[1: 0: \alpha^{2}\right]=f^{2} .
\end{aligned}
$$

The tangents to the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ at $\alpha_{0}$ and $\overline{\alpha_{0}}$ are the lines
$\mathbf{A}\left[\begin{array}{lll}1 & 1 & 1\end{array}\right]^{T}=\langle 1:-2: 1\rangle \quad$ and $\quad \mathbf{A}\left[\begin{array}{lll}1 & -1 & 1\end{array}\right]^{T}=\langle 1: 2: 1\rangle$
and these meet at
$\langle 1:-2: 1\rangle \times\langle 1: 2: 1\rangle=[-1: 0: 1]=f^{1}$.

### 3.8 A rational parabola

In this section we show the existence of a two-parameter family of rational hyperbolic parabolas, and give the associated transformations to parabolic standard coordinates.
The conic $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ with equation

$$
\left(t_{1}^{2} t_{2}^{2}-1\right) x^{2}+2\left(t_{1}^{2} t_{2}^{2}+1\right) x+\left(t_{1}^{2}-t_{2}^{2}\right) y^{2}+\left(t_{1}^{2} t_{2}^{2}-1\right)=0
$$

meets the null circle at the null points $\alpha_{0}=$ $\left[1-t_{1}^{2}: 2 t_{1}: t_{1}^{2}+1\right]$ and $\overline{\alpha_{0}}=\left[1-t_{1}^{2}:-2 t_{1}: t_{1}^{2}+1\right]$. This is a parabola with foci
$f_{1}=\left[t_{1}+t_{2}-t_{1} t_{2}^{2}+t_{1}^{2} t_{2}: 0: t_{1}+t_{2}+t_{1} t_{2}^{2}-t_{1}^{2} t_{2}\right] \quad$ and $f_{2}=\left[t_{1}-t_{2}-t_{1} t_{2}^{2}-t_{1}^{2} t_{2}: 0: t_{1}-t_{2}+t_{1} t_{2}^{2}+t_{1}^{2} t_{2}\right]$, axis $A=\langle 0: 1: 0\rangle$, and t-foci $f^{1}=\left[t_{1}^{2}+1: 0:-\left(t_{1}^{2}-1\right)\right]$ and $f^{2}=\left[t_{2}^{2}-1: 0:-\left(t_{2}^{2}+1\right)\right]$. The null points $\beta_{0}, \overline{\beta_{0}}$ are $\beta_{0}=\left[1-t_{2}^{2}: 2 t_{2}: t_{2}^{2}+1\right]$ and $\overline{\beta_{0}}=\left[1-t_{2}^{2}:-2 t_{2}: t_{2}^{2}+1\right]$, and the vertices are $v_{1}=\left[t_{1} t_{2}-1: 0:-\left(t_{1} t_{2}+1\right)\right]$ and

$$
\begin{aligned}
v_{2} & =\left[t_{1} t_{2}+1: 0:-\left(t_{1} t_{2}-1\right)\right] . \text { Note that } \\
q & \left(f^{1}, f^{2}\right)-1 \\
& =q\left(\left[t_{1}^{2}+1: 0:-\left(t_{1}^{2}-1\right)\right],\left[t_{2}^{2}-1: 0:-\left(t_{2}^{2}+1\right)\right]\right)-1 \\
& =\frac{1}{4}\left(t_{1}-t_{2}\right)^{2} \frac{\left(t_{1}+t_{2}\right)^{2}}{t_{1}^{2} t_{2}^{2}}
\end{aligned}
$$

is a square.
We are now interested in sending these points $\alpha_{0}, \overline{\alpha_{0}}, \beta_{0}, \overline{\beta_{0}}$ to the points $[1: 1: 1],[1:-1: 1],[-1: 1: 1],[-1:-1: 1]$ respectively, using a projective transformation. Firstly, we send_ $[1: 1: 1],[1: 0: 0],[0: 1: 0],[0: 0: 1]$ to $\alpha_{0}, \overline{\alpha_{0}}, \beta_{0}, \overline{\beta_{0}}$ respectively by the linear transformation $T_{1}(v)=v N$ where $N$ is
$N=\left[\begin{array}{ccc}-t_{2}\left(t_{1}^{2}-1\right) & -2 t_{1} t_{2} & t_{2}\left(t_{1}^{2}+1\right) \\ -t_{1}\left(t_{2}^{2}-1\right) & 2 t_{1} t_{2} & t_{1}\left(t_{2}^{2}+1\right) \\ t_{1}\left(t_{2}^{2}-1\right) & 2 t_{1} t_{2} & -t_{1}\left(t_{2}^{2}+1\right)\end{array}\right]$.
Its inverse sends $\alpha_{0}, \overline{\alpha_{0}}, \beta_{0}, \overline{\beta_{0}}$ back to $[1: 1: 1],[1: 0: 0]$, $[0: 1: 0],[0: 0: 1]$ by $T(v)=v R$ where $R$ is the adjugate of $N$ :
$R=\left[\begin{array}{ccc}-2 t_{1}\left(t_{2}^{2}+1\right) & \left(t_{1}-t_{2}\right)\left(t_{1} t_{2}-1\right) & -\left(t_{1} t_{2}+1\right)\left(t_{1}+t_{2}\right) \\ 0 & t_{1}^{2}-t_{2}^{2} & t_{1}^{2}-t_{2}^{2} \\ -2 t_{1}\left(t_{2}^{2}-1\right) & \left(t_{1}-t_{2}\right)\left(t_{1} t_{2}+1\right) & -\left(t_{1} t_{2}-1\right)\left(t_{1}+t_{2}\right)\end{array}\right]$.
Secondly, the linear transformation $T_{2}(v)=v M$, where $M$ is
$M=\left[\begin{array}{ccc}1 & -1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & -1\end{array}\right]$,
sends $[1: 1: 1],[1: 0: 0],[0: 1: 0],[0: 0: 1]$ to $[1: 1: 1]$, $[-1: 1: 1],[-1: 1: 1],[-1:-1: 1]$ respectively. Thus, the required transformation is $T(v)=v(R M)$ where $R M$ is

$$
\left[\begin{array}{ccc}
-\left(t_{1} t_{2}+1\right)\left(t_{1}+t_{2}\right) & 0 & \left(t_{1}-t_{2}\right)\left(t_{1} t_{2}-1\right) \\
0 & \left(t_{1}-t_{2}\right)\left(t_{1}+t_{2}\right) & 0 \\
-\left(t_{1} t_{2}-1\right)\left(t_{1}+t_{2}\right) & 0 & \left(t_{1}-t_{2}\right)\left(t_{1} t_{2}+1\right)
\end{array}\right] .
$$

After applying this linear transformation, the matrix $J$ is replaced by

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{C} & =(R M)^{-1} J\left((R M)^{-1}\right)^{T} \\
& =\left[\begin{array}{ccc}
t_{1} t_{2}\left(t_{1}-t_{2}\right)^{2} & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 4 t_{1}^{2} t_{2}^{2} & 0 \\
0 & 0 & -t_{1} t_{2}\left(t_{1}+t_{2}\right)^{2}
\end{array}\right] \text { and } \\
\mathbf{D} & =(R M)^{T} J(R M) \\
& =\left[\begin{array}{ccc}
4 t_{1} t_{2}\left(t_{1}+t_{2}\right)^{2} & 0 & 0 \\
0 & \left(t_{1}^{2}-t_{2}^{2}\right)^{2} & 0 \\
0 & 0 & -4 t_{1} t_{2}\left(t_{1}-t_{2}\right)^{2}
\end{array}\right] .
\end{aligned}
$$

and we get $\alpha=\frac{t_{1}-t_{2}}{t_{1}+t_{2}}$. In this new coordinate system, the parabola is $y^{2}=x z$ with foci $f_{1}=\left[t_{1}\left(t_{1}+t_{2}\right): 0:-t_{2}\left(t_{1}-t_{2}\right)\right]$ and $f_{2}=$ $\left[t_{2}\left(t_{1}+t_{2}\right): 0: t_{1}\left(t_{1}-t_{2}\right)\right]$.
Example 1 If $t_{1}=1 / 2$ and $t_{2}=3$ then the parabola $\mathscr{P}_{0}$ has equation $26 x+5 x^{2}-35 y^{2}+5=0$ which meets the null circle at the null points $\alpha_{0}=[3: 4: 5]$ and $\overline{\alpha_{0}}=$ [3:-4:5]; has axis $A=\langle 0: 1: 0\rangle$, foci $f_{1}=[-1: 0: 29]$ and $f_{2}=[-31: 0: 11]$, vertices $v_{1}=[1: 0:-5]$ and $v_{2}=$ $[5: 0:-1], t$-foci $f^{1}=[5: 0: 3]$ and $f^{2}=[4: 0:-5]$, and $\beta_{0}=[-4: 3: 5]$ and $\overline{\beta_{0}}=[4: 3:-5]$.

### 3.9 Focal and base lines

We now define some other fundamental points and lines associated with a point $p_{0} \equiv\left[t^{2}: t: 1\right]$ on the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$. It will be convenient to introduce the quantities
$\Delta_{1}(t) \equiv \alpha+1+t^{2} \alpha-t^{2} \alpha^{2}$
$\Delta_{2}(t) \equiv \alpha-1+t^{2} \alpha+t^{2} \alpha^{2}$
$\Delta_{3}(t) \equiv \alpha+1-t^{2} \alpha+t^{2} \alpha^{2}$
$\Delta_{4}(t) \equiv \alpha-1-t^{2} \alpha^{2}-t^{2} \alpha$
which depends on $t$, and so on $p_{0}$, and which will appear in many formulas to follow. Notice that
$\Delta_{1}^{2}-\Delta_{2}^{2}=-4 \alpha\left(t^{2} \alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(t^{2}+1\right), \quad \Delta_{1}^{2}-\Delta_{3}^{2}=-4 \alpha t^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)$
$\Delta_{1}^{2}-\Delta_{4}^{2}=-4 \alpha\left(t^{4} \alpha^{2}-1\right), \quad \Delta_{2}^{2}-\Delta_{3}^{2}=4 \alpha\left(t^{4} \alpha^{2}-1\right)$
$\Delta_{2}^{2}-\Delta_{4}^{2}=4 t^{2} \alpha\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right), \quad \Delta_{3}^{2}-\Delta_{4}^{2}=-4 \alpha\left(t^{2}-1\right)\left(t^{2} \alpha^{2}+1\right)$.
The focal lines $R_{1}, R_{2}$ and the dual focal line points $r_{1}, r_{2}$ are defined by, and calculated as:

$$
\begin{aligned}
R_{1} & \equiv f_{1} p_{0}=[\alpha+1: 0: \alpha(\alpha-1)] \times\left[t^{2}: t: 1\right] \\
& =\left\langle t \alpha(\alpha-1): \Delta_{1}:-t(\alpha+1)\right\rangle \\
R_{2} & \equiv f_{2} p_{0}=[1-\alpha: 0: \alpha(\alpha+1)] \times\left[t^{2}: t: 1\right] \\
& =\left\langle t \alpha(\alpha+1):-\Delta_{2}: t(\alpha-1)\right\rangle \\
r_{1} & \equiv R_{1}^{\perp}=F_{1} P_{0} \\
& =\left[t(\alpha-1)^{2}(\alpha+1):-\alpha \Delta_{1}: t \alpha(\alpha-1)(\alpha+1)^{2}\right] \\
r_{2} & \equiv R_{2}^{\perp}=F_{2} P_{0} \\
& =\left[t(\alpha-1)(\alpha+1)^{2}: \alpha \Delta_{2}:-t \alpha(\alpha-1)^{2}(\alpha+1)\right] .
\end{aligned}
$$

Since $R_{1}, R_{2}$ and $P^{0}$ are concurrent at $p_{0}$, dually we see that $r_{1}, r_{2}$ and $p^{0}$ are collinear on $P_{0}$.
The altitude base points $t_{1}$ and $t_{2}$ and the dual altitude base lines $T_{1}, T_{2}$ are defined by, and calculated as:
$t_{1} \equiv F_{1} R_{1}=\left[(\alpha-1) \Delta_{1}: 4 t \alpha^{2}: \alpha(\alpha+1) \Delta_{1}\right]$
$t_{2} \equiv F_{2} R_{2}=\left[(\alpha+1) \Delta_{2}: 4 t \alpha^{2}:-\alpha(\alpha-1) \Delta_{2}\right]$
$T_{1} \equiv t_{1}^{\perp}=f_{1} r_{1}=\left\langle\alpha(\alpha-1) \Delta_{1}:-4 t \alpha\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right):-(\alpha+1) \Delta_{1}\right\rangle$
$T_{2} \equiv t_{2}^{\perp}=f_{2} r_{2}=\left\langle\alpha(\alpha+1) \Delta_{2}:-4 t \alpha\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right):(\alpha-1) \Delta_{2}\right\rangle$.

The focal lines $R_{1}$ and $R_{2}$ also meet the directrices at the second altitude base points $u_{1}, u_{2}$, with dual lines $U_{1}, U_{2}$ :

$$
\begin{aligned}
& u_{1} \equiv R_{2} F_{1}=\left[(\alpha-1) \Delta_{2}: 2 t \alpha\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right): \alpha(\alpha+1) \Delta_{2}\right] \\
& u_{2} \equiv R_{1} F_{2}=\left[-(\alpha+1) \Delta_{1}: 2 t \alpha\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right): \alpha(\alpha-1) \Delta_{1}\right] \\
& U_{1} \equiv u_{1}^{\perp}=\left\langle\alpha(\alpha+1) \Delta_{1}: 2 t\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)^{2}:(\alpha-1) \Delta_{1}\right\rangle \\
& U_{2} \equiv u_{2}^{\perp}=\left\langle-\alpha(\alpha-1) \Delta_{2}: 2 t\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)^{2}:(\alpha+1) \Delta_{2}\right\rangle
\end{aligned}
$$



Figure 13: The $r, s, t$ and $w$ points of $p_{0}$ on $\mathcal{P}_{0}$
The t-base lines $S_{1}, S_{2}$ and their duals the $\mathbf{t}$-base points $s_{1}, s_{2}$ are defined by, and calculated as:
$S_{1} \equiv f_{1} t_{2}=\left\langle-2 t \alpha^{2}(\alpha-1):\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right) \Delta_{2}: 2 t \alpha(\alpha+1)\right\rangle$
$S_{2} \equiv f_{2} t_{1}=\left\langle 2 t \alpha^{2}(\alpha+1):-\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right) \Delta_{1}: 2 t \alpha(\alpha-1)\right\rangle$
$s_{1} \equiv S_{1}^{\perp}=F_{1} T_{2}=\left[2 t(\alpha-1): \Delta_{2}: 2 t \alpha(\alpha+1)\right]$
$s_{2} \equiv S_{2}^{\perp}=F_{2} T_{1}=\left[2 t(\alpha+1): \Delta_{1}:-2 t \alpha(\alpha-1)\right]$.
Theorem 19 (T-base) Both $s_{1}$ and $s_{2}$ lie on the tangent $P^{0}$. Dually the lines $S_{1}$ and $S_{2}$ meet at $p^{0}$.

Proof. We verify that $s_{1}$ and $s_{2}$ lie on the tangent $P^{0}=$ $\left\langle 1:-2 t: t^{2}\right\rangle$ by computing

$$
\begin{gathered}
{\left[2 t(\alpha-1): \Delta_{2}: 2 t \alpha(\alpha+1)\right]\left[1:-2 t: t^{2}\right]^{T}=0} \\
{\left[2 t(\alpha+1): \Delta_{1}:-2 t \alpha(\alpha-1)\right]\left[1:-2 t: t^{2}\right]^{T}=0}
\end{gathered}
$$

The statement that $S_{1}$ and $S_{2}$ meet at $p^{0}$ follows from duality.

The $w$-points $w_{1}$ and $w_{2}$, and their duals $W_{1}$ and $W_{2}$, are defined and computed as:
$w_{1} \equiv F_{1} S_{1}=\left[\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)(\alpha-1) \Delta_{2}:-8 t \alpha^{3}: \alpha\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)(\alpha+1) \Delta_{2}\right]$
$w_{2} \equiv F_{2} S_{2}=\left[\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)(\alpha+1) \Delta_{1}: 8 t \alpha^{3}:-\alpha\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)(\alpha-1) \Delta_{1}\right]$
$W_{1} \equiv f_{1} s_{1}=\left(\alpha(\alpha-1) \Delta_{2}: 8 t \alpha^{2}:-(\alpha+1) \Delta_{2}\right)$
$W_{2} \equiv f_{2} s_{2}=\left(\alpha(\alpha+1) \Delta_{1}:-8 t \alpha^{2}:(\alpha-1) \Delta_{1}\right)$.

Theorem 20 ( $J$ points collinearities) We have collinearities $\left[\left[t_{1} t_{2} j^{0}\right]\right],\left[\left[j_{0} u_{1} u_{2}\right]\right]$ and $\left[\left[w_{1} w_{2} j_{0}\right]\right]$.

Proof. Using the various formulas above, we compute
$\operatorname{det}\left(\begin{array}{ccc}(\alpha-1) \Delta_{1} & 4 t \alpha^{2} & \alpha(\alpha+1) \Delta_{1} \\ (\alpha+1) \Delta_{2} & 4 t \alpha^{2} & -\alpha(\alpha-1) \Delta_{2} \\ -t^{2} & 0 & 1\end{array}\right)=0$,
$\operatorname{det}\left(\begin{array}{ccc}1 & 0 & t^{2} \alpha^{2} \\ -(\alpha+1) \Delta_{1} & 2 t \alpha\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right) & \alpha(\alpha-1) \Delta_{1} \\ (\alpha-1) \Delta_{2} & 2 t \alpha\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right) & \alpha(\alpha+1) \Delta_{2}\end{array}\right)=0$
and

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \operatorname{det}\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)(\alpha-1) \Delta_{2} & -8 t \alpha^{3} & \alpha\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)(\alpha+1) \Delta_{2} \\
\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)(\alpha+1) \Delta_{1} & 8 t \alpha^{3} & -\alpha\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)(\alpha-1) \Delta_{1} \\
1 & 0 & t^{2} \alpha^{2}
\end{array}\right) \\
& =0 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Theorem 21 (Null focal line) The focal line $R_{1}$ of a point $p_{0}$ on the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ is a null line precisely when $\Delta_{3}=0$. Similarly, the focal line $R_{2}$ is a null line precisely when $\Delta_{4}=0$.

Proof. By the Null points/lines theorem, the focal line $R_{1}=\left\langle t \alpha(\alpha-1): \Delta_{1}:-t(\alpha+1)\right\rangle$ of $p_{0}=\left[t^{2}: t: 1\right]$ is a null line precisely when
$\left\langle t \alpha(\alpha-1): \Delta_{1}:-t(\alpha+1)\right\rangle \mathbf{D}\left\langle t \alpha(\alpha-1): \Delta_{1}:-t(\alpha+1)\right\rangle^{T}=0$ or
$-\alpha^{2}\left(\alpha+t^{2} \alpha^{2}-t^{2} \alpha+1\right)^{2}=0$.
Since $\alpha \neq 0$, this is equivalent to $\Delta_{3}=0$. Similarly $R_{2}=$ $\left\langle t \alpha(\alpha+1):-\Delta_{2}: t(\alpha-1)\right\rangle$ is a null line precisely when $-\alpha^{2}\left(-\alpha+t^{2} \alpha^{2}+t^{2} \alpha+1\right)^{2}=0$
or $\Delta_{4}=0$.

## 4 Parallels between the Euclidean and hyperbolic parabolas

### 4.1 Some congruent triangles

Recall that the focal line $R_{1} \equiv p_{0} f_{1}$ meets the directrix $F_{1}$ in the point $t_{1}$. We will assume that the focal lines $R_{1}$ and $R_{2}$ are non-null line so that we have $\Delta_{3} \neq 0$ and $\Delta_{4} \neq 0$.

Theorem 22 (Congruent triangles) Suppose that the tangent $P^{0}$ to $\underline{\mathcal{P}}_{0}$ at $p_{0}$ meets $S_{2}=t_{1} f_{2}$ at the point $m^{1}$. Then the triangles $\overline{p_{0} t_{1} m^{1}}$ and $\overline{p_{0} f_{2} m^{1}}$ are congruent. In particular i) $q\left(p_{0}, t_{1}\right)=q\left(p_{0}, f_{2}\right)$; ii) $q\left(t_{1}, m^{1}\right)=q\left(m^{1}, f_{2}\right)$; iii) $S_{2} \perp P^{0}$; iv) the tangent $P^{0}$ is a bisector of the vertex $\overline{R_{1} R_{2}}$; v) $S\left(S_{2}, R_{1}\right)=S\left(S_{2}, R_{2}\right)$; and vi) the tangent $P^{0}$ is a midline of the side $\overline{t_{1} f_{2}}$. The same statements are true by $f_{1}-f_{2}$ symmetry if we interchange the indices 1 and 2.

Proof. i) The first statement $q\left(p_{0}, t_{1}\right)=q\left(p_{0}, f_{2}\right)$ comes from the definition of the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$, and we can also calculate quadrances to obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
q\left(p_{0}, t_{1}\right) & =q\left(\left[t^{2}: t: 1\right],\left[(\alpha-1) \Delta_{1}: 4 t \alpha^{2}: \alpha(\alpha+1) \Delta_{1}\right]\right) \\
& =\frac{\Delta_{4}^{2}}{\Delta_{4}^{2}-\Delta_{3}^{2}}=q\left(\left[t^{2}: t: 1\right],[1-\alpha: 0: \alpha(\alpha+1)]\right) \\
& =q\left(p_{0}, f_{2}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

ii) Calculate

$$
\begin{aligned}
m^{1} & =P^{0} S_{2} \\
& =\left\langle 1:-2 t: t^{2}\right\rangle \times\left\langle 2 t \alpha^{2}(\alpha+1):-\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right) \Delta_{1}: 2 t \alpha(\alpha-1)\right\rangle \\
& =\left[t^{2}(\alpha-1)^{2} \Delta_{4}:-2 t \alpha \Delta_{4}:-(\alpha+1)^{2} \Delta_{4}\right] \\
& =\left[-t^{2}(\alpha-1)^{2}: 2 t \alpha:(\alpha+1)^{2}\right] .
\end{aligned}
$$

Here we have used the fact that the focal line $R_{2}$ is non-null so that $\Delta_{4}$ is nonzero. Thus

$$
\begin{aligned}
& q\left(t_{1}, m^{1}\right)= \\
& q\left(\left[(\alpha-1) \Delta_{1}: 4 t \alpha^{2}: \alpha(\alpha+1) \Delta_{1}\right],\left[-t^{2}(\alpha-1)^{2}: 2 t \alpha:(\alpha+1)^{2}\right]\right) \\
& =-\frac{1}{4} \frac{\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right) \Delta_{4}}{\alpha \Delta_{3}} \\
& =q\left(\left[-t^{2}(\alpha-1)^{2}: 2 t \alpha:(\alpha+1)^{2}\right],[1-\alpha: 0: \alpha(\alpha+1)]\right) \\
& =q\left(m^{1}, f_{2}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

iii) Since the tangent line $P^{0}$ passes through $s_{2}$, which is the dual of the line $S_{2}=t_{1} f_{2}$, the tangent $P^{0}$ is perpendicular to the line $S_{2}$; and we can also check that

$$
\left\langle 1:-2 t: t^{2}\right\rangle \mathbf{D}\left\langle 2 t \alpha^{2}(\alpha+1):\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right) \Delta_{1}: 2 t \alpha(\alpha-1)\right\rangle^{T}=0 .
$$

iv) The tangent $P^{0}$ is a bisector of the vertex $\overline{R_{1} R_{2}}$ since

$$
\begin{aligned}
S\left(R_{1}, P^{0}\right) & =S\left(\left\langle t \alpha(\alpha-1): \Delta_{1}:-t(\alpha+1)\right\rangle,\left\langle 1:-2 t: t^{2}\right\rangle\right) \\
& =\frac{\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(\Delta_{3}^{2}-\Delta_{4}^{2}\right)}{4 \alpha \Delta_{4} \Delta_{3}} \\
& =S\left(\left\langle t \alpha(\alpha+1):-\Delta_{2}: t(\alpha-1)\right\rangle,\left\langle 1:-2 t: t^{2}\right\rangle\right) \\
& =S\left(R_{2}, P^{0}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

v) Now calculate the spreads

$$
\begin{aligned}
S\left(S_{2}, R_{1}\right)= & S\left(\left\langle 2 t \alpha^{2}(\alpha+1):-\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right) \Delta_{1}: 2 t \alpha(\alpha-1)\right\rangle,\right. \\
& \left.\left\langle t \alpha(\alpha-1): \Delta_{1}:-t(\alpha+1)\right\rangle\right) \\
= & \frac{4 t^{2} \alpha\left(\alpha^{2}+1\right)^{2}}{16 t^{2} \alpha^{3}-\Delta_{1}^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)} \\
= & S\left(\left\langle 2 t \alpha^{2}(\alpha+1):-\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right) \Delta_{1}: 2 t \alpha(\alpha-1)\right\rangle,\right. \\
& \left.\quad\left\langle t \alpha(\alpha+1):-\Delta_{2}: t(\alpha-1)\right\rangle\right) \\
= & S\left(S_{2}, R_{2}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

vi) It is obvious that the tangent $P^{0}$ is a midline of the side $\overline{t_{1} f_{2}}$, since $P^{0}$ is perpendicular to the line $S_{2}=\underline{t_{1} f_{2}}$ through the point $m^{1}$ which is, from ii), a midpoint of $\overline{t_{1} f_{2}}$. The symmetry between $f_{1}$ and $f_{2}$ in the definition of the parabola $\mathscr{P}_{0}$ ensures that all these statements hold also if we interchange the indices 1,2 .


Figure 14: Two pairs of congruent triangles
In Figure 14 we see also the point $m^{2}=P_{0} S_{1}$ and the congruent triangles $\overline{p_{0} t_{2} m^{2}}$ and $\overline{p_{0} f_{1} m^{2}}$. We call $m^{1}$ and $m^{2}$ the $\mathbf{t}$-perpendicular points of $p_{0}$. Note that the theorem allows us a simple construction of the tangent $P^{0}$ at $p_{0}$ : drop the perpendicular to the line $t_{1} f_{2}$.
Corollary 1 We have i) the triangles $\overline{m^{1} t_{1} j^{0}}$ and $\overline{m^{1} f_{2} j^{0}}$ are congruent, and ii) the triangles $\overline{p_{0} t_{1} j^{0}}$ and $\overline{p_{0} f_{2} j^{0}}$ are congruent. The same statements are true by $f_{1}-f_{2}$ symmetry if we interchange the indices 1 and 2.

Proof. The triangles $\overline{m^{1} f_{2} j^{0}}$ and $\overline{m^{1} t_{1} j^{0}}$ are right triangles since $P^{0}$ is perpendicular to $S_{2}$; we also have $q\left(t_{1}, m^{1}\right)=$ $q\left(m^{1}, f_{2}\right)$ and $\overline{m^{1} j^{0}}$ is a common side.
i) We calculate the quadrances

$$
\begin{aligned}
q\left(t_{1}, j^{0}\right) & =q\left(\left[(\alpha-1) \Delta_{1}: 4 t \alpha^{2}: \alpha(\alpha+1) \Delta_{1}\right],\left[-t^{2}: 0: 1\right]\right) \\
& =\frac{\Delta_{4}^{2}}{\Delta_{4}^{2}-\Delta_{1}^{2}} \\
& =q\left([1-\alpha: 0: \alpha(\alpha+1)],\left[-t^{2}: 0: 1\right]\right)=q\left(j^{0}, f_{2}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

and spreads

$$
\begin{aligned}
S\left(t_{1} m^{1}, t_{1} j^{0}\right) & =\frac{q\left(m^{1}, j^{0}\right)}{q\left(t_{1}, j^{0}\right)}=\frac{16 t^{2} \alpha^{3}}{16 t^{2} \alpha^{3}-\Delta_{1}^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)} \\
& =\frac{q\left(m^{1}, j^{0}\right)}{q\left(j^{0}, f_{2}\right)}=S\left(f_{2} j^{0}, f_{2} m^{1}\right) . \\
S\left(j^{0} m^{1}, j^{0} t_{1}\right) & =\frac{q\left(m^{1}, t_{1}\right)}{q\left(t_{1}, j^{0}\right)}=\frac{\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right) \Delta_{1}^{2}}{16 t^{2} \alpha^{3}-\Delta_{1}^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)} \\
& =\frac{q\left(m^{1}, f_{2}\right)}{q\left(j^{0}, f_{2}\right)}=S\left(j^{0} m^{1}, j^{0} f_{2}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore, the triangles $\overline{m^{1} t_{1} j^{0}}$ and $\overline{m^{1} f_{2} j^{0}}$ are congruent. ii) The triangles $\overline{p_{0} f_{2} j^{0}}$ and $\overline{p_{0} t_{1} j^{0}}$ have one common side $\overline{p_{0} j^{0}}$. Using the Spread law and the congruences above,

$$
\begin{aligned}
S\left(t_{1} p_{0}, t_{1} j^{0}\right) & =\frac{S\left(p_{0} t_{1}, p_{0} j^{0}\right) q\left(p_{0}, j^{0}\right)}{q\left(t_{1}, j^{0}\right)} \\
& =\frac{S\left(p_{0} f_{2}, p_{0} j^{0}\right) q\left(p_{0}, j^{0}\right)}{q\left(f_{2}, j^{0}\right)}=\frac{\Delta_{1}^{2}-\Delta_{3}^{2}}{\Delta_{4}^{2}} \\
& =S\left(f_{2} p_{0}, f_{2} j^{0}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore, the triangles $\overline{p_{0} f_{2} j^{0}}$ and $\overline{p_{0} t_{1} j^{0}}$ are congruent.

Theorem 23 (Tangent base symmetry) Let $j^{0} \equiv A P^{0}$ be the meet of the axis $A$ and the tangent $P^{0}$, and $h_{0}$ the base of the altitude from $p_{0}$ to $A$. Then i) $q\left(b_{1}, j^{0}\right)=q\left(f_{2}, h_{0}\right)$ and ii) $q\left(v_{1}, j^{0}\right)=q\left(v_{1}, h_{0}\right)$. The same statements are true if we interchange the indices 1 and 2 by $f_{1}-f_{2}$ symmetry.

Proof. i) We calculate the quadrances

$$
\begin{aligned}
q\left(b_{1}, j^{0}\right) & =q\left(\left[\alpha(\alpha-1): 0: \alpha^{2}(\alpha+1)\right],\left[-t^{2}: 0: 1\right]\right) \\
& =\frac{\Delta_{2}^{2}}{\Delta_{2}^{2}-\Delta_{3}^{2}}=q\left([1-\alpha: 0: \alpha(\alpha+1)],\left[t^{2}: 0: 1\right]\right) \\
& =q\left(f_{2}, h_{0}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

ii) Similarly, we calculate the quadrances

$$
\begin{aligned}
q\left(v_{1}, j^{0}\right) & =q\left([0: 0: 1],\left[-t^{2}: 0: 1\right]\right)=\frac{t^{4} \alpha^{2}}{t^{4} \alpha^{2}-1} \\
& =q\left([0: 0: 1],\left[t^{2}: 0: 1\right]\right)=q\left(v_{1}, h_{0}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$



Figure 15: The $j^{0}$ and $h_{0}$ points
Theorem 24 (Two chord midpoints) Let $p_{0} \equiv p(t), q_{0} \equiv$ $p(u)$ be two points on a hyperbolic parabola $\mathscr{P}_{0}$, with $\overline{p_{0}}$ the opposite point of $p_{0}$ with respect to the axis $A$. Suppose that the chords $\overline{p_{0} q_{0}}$ and $\overline{q_{0} \overline{p_{0}}}$ meet $A$ at $x$ and $y$ respectively. Then the vertices $v_{1}, v_{2}$ of $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ are the midpoints of the side $\overline{x y}$.

Proof. Suppose $p_{0}=\left[t^{2}: t: 1\right]$ and $q_{0}=\left[u^{2}: u: 1\right]$. The line $p_{0} q_{0}=\langle 1:-(t+u): t u\rangle$ meets the axis $A=[0: 1: 0]$ at $x=[-t u: 0: 1]$. The chord $\overline{p_{0}} q_{0}=\langle 1: t-u:-t u\rangle$ intersects $A=\langle 0: 1: 0\rangle$ at $y=[t u: 0: 1]$. Thus

$$
\begin{aligned}
q\left(v_{1}, x\right) & =q([0: 0: 1],[-t u: 0: 1])=\frac{\alpha^{2} t^{2} u^{2}}{\left(t^{2} u^{2} \alpha^{2}-1\right)} \\
& =q([0: 0: 1],[t u: 0: 1])=q\left(v_{1}, y\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

which shows $v_{1}$ is a midpoint of the side $\overline{x y}$. The other midpoint will be perpendicular to $v_{1}$, which must be $v_{2}$ without calculation.


Figure 16: Two chord midpoints

### 4.2 The optical property

Recall the famous optical property of a parabola $\mathcal{P}$ in Euclidean geometry: if $P$ is a point lying on $P$, and light emanates from the focus $F$ heading towards the point $P$, then the light will be reflected to be parallel to the axis. An analogous result in the hyperbolic case is the statement iv) of the Congruent triangles theorem: that the tangent line $P_{0}$ to a point $p_{0}$ is a biline (bisector) of the vertex $\overline{R_{1} R_{2}}$.
So reflecting the focal line $R_{1} \equiv f_{1} p_{0}$ in the tangent $P^{0}$ results in the other focal line $R_{2}$, which is perpendicular to the directrix $F_{2}$.
Recall from [16] that in Universal Hyperbolic Geometry there is an important notion of parallelism, which is quite different from the usage in classical hyperbolic geometry. We say rather generally that the parallel line $P$ through a point $a$ to a line $L$ is the line through $a$ perpendicular to the altitude from $a$ to $L$.
Now recall that given a point $p_{0}$ on the hyperbolic parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$, the perpendicular to the axis $A$ through $p_{0}$ is $J_{0} \equiv$ $\left(j_{0}\right)^{\perp}=a p_{0}=\left\langle 1: 0:-t^{2}\right\rangle$ with dual point $j_{0}=P_{0} A=$ $\left[1: 0: t^{2} \alpha^{2}\right.$. Therefore, the parallel line to the axis $A$ through the point $p_{0}$ is
$L_{0}=j_{0} p_{0}=\left\langle-t^{3} \alpha^{2}: t^{4} \alpha^{2}-1: t\right\rangle$.

Here then is another analog of the optical property, dealing with the relationship between two spreads formed by the tangent line $P_{0}$. Recall that the quadrance of the parabola was defined as $q_{\mathcal{P}_{0}} \equiv q\left(f_{1}, f_{2}\right)$.

Theorem 25 (Parallel line spread relation) Let $p_{0}$ be $a$ point on the hyperbolic parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$. If $\widehat{T}$ is the spread between the tangent line $P^{0}$ at $p_{0}$ and the parallel line $L_{0}$ to the axis through $p_{0}$, and $\widehat{S}$ is the common spread between the tangent $P^{0}$ and the lines $R_{1}$ and $R_{2}$, then
$\frac{(\widehat{S}-\widehat{T}) \widehat{S}}{1-\widehat{T}}=1-q_{\mathcal{P}_{0}}$.
Proof. Using the Spread formula, we compute that
$\widehat{S}=S\left(R_{1}, P^{0}\right)=\frac{\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(\Delta_{3}^{2}-\Delta_{4}^{2}\right)}{4 \alpha \Delta_{4} \Delta_{3}}$
and
$\widehat{T}=S\left(L_{0}, P^{0}\right)=\frac{-\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(t^{4} \alpha^{2}+1\right)^{2}}{\left(t^{4} \alpha^{2}-1\right) \Delta_{3} \Delta_{4}}$.
So now
$\frac{(\widehat{S}-\widehat{T}) \widehat{S}}{1-\widehat{T}}=-\frac{1}{4} \frac{\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)^{2}}{\alpha^{2}}=1-q_{\mathcal{P}_{0}}$.


Figure 17: The parallel line spread relation
Note that $1-q_{\mathcal{P}_{0}}=q\left(b_{1}, f_{2}\right)$ since $b_{1}$ and $f_{1}$ are perpendicular points. So in the limiting Euclidean case when $b_{1}$ is very close to $f_{2}$, it follows that $\widehat{S}$ is very close to $\widehat{T}$.

### 4.3 The $s$ points and $S$ circles

Recall that $s_{1} \equiv F_{1} P^{0}$ and $s_{2} \equiv F_{2} P^{0}$.
Theorem 26 (The $S_{1}$ and $S_{2}$ circles) The circle $S_{1}$ with center $s_{1}$ passing through $f_{2}$ also passes through $t_{1}$, and is tangent at these points to $R_{2}$ and $R_{1}$ respectively. In particular i) $q\left(s_{1}, t_{1}\right)=q\left(s_{1}, f_{2}\right)$; ii) $R_{1} \perp F_{1}$; iii) $R_{2} \perp T_{2}$ and iv) $S\left(s_{1} t_{1}, t_{1} f_{2}\right)=S\left(s_{1} f_{2}, f_{2} t_{1}\right)$. The same statements are true if we interchange the indices 1 and 2, giving also a circle $\mathcal{S}_{2}$ with center $s_{2}$.

Proof. i) Calculate

$$
\begin{aligned}
q\left(s_{1}, t_{1}\right)= & q\left(\left[2 t(\alpha-1): \Delta_{2}: 2 t \alpha(\alpha+1)\right]\right. \\
& {\left.\left[(\alpha-1) \Delta_{1}: 4 t \alpha^{2}: \alpha(\alpha+1) \Delta_{1}\right]\right) } \\
= & \frac{\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right) \Delta_{4}^{2}}{16 t^{2} \alpha^{3}+\Delta_{2}^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)}=q\left(s_{1}, f_{2}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

ii) The line $R_{1}=f_{1} p_{0}$ is clearly perpendicular to the directrix $F_{1}$ since it passes through the focus $f_{1}=F_{1}^{\perp}$.
iii) Since $t_{2}=R_{2} F_{2}, S_{1}=f_{1} t_{2}$, the lines $R_{2}, F_{2}$ and $S_{1}$ are concurrent at $t_{2}$, so the line $T_{2}=t_{2}^{\perp}$ passes through $r_{2}, f_{2}$ and $s_{1}$. Therefore $T_{2}$ is perpendicular to the line $R_{2}$.
iv) Calculate

$$
\begin{aligned}
S\left(t_{1} s_{1}, t_{1} f_{2}\right)= & S(\langle\alpha(\alpha+1): 0: 1-\alpha\rangle \\
& \left.\left\langle 2 t \alpha^{2}(\alpha+1):-\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right) \Delta_{1}: 2 t \alpha(\alpha-1)\right\rangle\right) \\
= & \frac{\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right) \Delta_{3}^{2}}{16 t^{2} \alpha^{3}-\Delta_{1}^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)} \\
= & S\left(f_{2} s_{1}, f_{2} t_{1}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$



Figure 18: The $\mathcal{S}_{1}$ and $\mathcal{S}_{2}$ circles
In particular, property iii) provides us with an important alternate construction of the tangent $P^{0}$ to the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ at $p_{0}$ : namely we construct the altitude $T_{2}$ to $p_{0} f_{2}$ through $f_{2}$, and obtain $s_{1}=F_{1} T_{2}$, giving $P^{0}=p_{0} s_{1}$ (or similarly construct $p_{0} S_{2}$ ). In Figure 18 we see the circles $\mathcal{S}_{1}$ and $\mathcal{S}_{2}$. Note that $\mathcal{S}_{2}$ looks like a hyperbola tangent to the null circle, in fact it is tangent at exactly the points where $S_{2}$ meets the null circle $\mathcal{C}$ - see the discussion in [18].

### 4.4 Focal chords and conjugates

A chord $\overline{p_{0} q_{0}}$ is a focal chord precisely when $p_{0} q_{0}$ passes through a focus. Such chords play an important role both in the Euclidean and the hyperbolic theory.


Figure 19: A focal chord $\overline{p_{0} q_{0}}$ with polar point $z$ on directrix
Theorem 27 (Focal tangents perpendicularity) If $p_{0} \equiv$ $p(t)$ and $q_{0} \equiv p(u)$ are two points on $\mathscr{P}_{0}$ then $\overline{p_{0} q_{0}}$ is a focal chord precisely when the respective tangents $P^{0}$ and $Q^{0}$ are perpendicular; and precisely when the polar point $z \equiv P^{0} Q^{0}$ lies on a directrix.
Proof. Suppose $p_{0}=\left[t^{2}: t: 1\right]$ and $q_{0}=\left[u^{2}: u: 1\right]$ lie on $\mathcal{P}_{0}$. Then $p_{0} q_{0}=\langle 1:-(t+u): t u\rangle$ is a focal line precisely when it passes through either $f_{1}$ of $f_{2}$, in other words precisely when

$$
\begin{aligned}
& (1:-(t+u): t u)[\alpha+1: 0: \alpha(\alpha-1)]^{T} \\
& \quad=\alpha+1+t u \alpha(\alpha-1)=0 \quad \text { or } \\
& (1:-(t+u): t u)[1-\alpha: 0: \alpha(\alpha+1)]^{T} \\
& \quad=-\alpha+1+t u \alpha(\alpha+1)=0 .
\end{aligned}
$$

On the other hand the tangents $P^{0}=\left\langle 1:-2 t: t^{2}\right\rangle$ and $Q^{0}=\left\langle 1:-2 u: u^{2}\right\rangle$ are perpendicular precisely when

$$
\begin{aligned}
0 & =\left\langle 1:-2 t: t^{2}\right\rangle \mathbf{D}\left\langle 1:-2 u: u^{2}\right\rangle^{T} \\
& =\alpha^{2}-4 t u \alpha^{2}-t^{2} u^{2} \alpha^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)-1 \\
& =(\alpha+1+t u \alpha(\alpha-1))(\alpha-1-t u \alpha(\alpha+1))
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus the two conditions are equivalent.
As in the Tangent meets theorem, the tangents $P^{0}$ and $Q^{0}$ meet at $z=[2 t u: t+u: 2]$. This point lies on $F_{1}=$ $\langle\alpha(\alpha+1): 0: 1-\alpha\rangle$ or $F_{2}=\langle\alpha(\alpha-1): 0: \alpha+1\rangle$ precisely when

$$
\begin{aligned}
& {[2 t u: t+u: 2](\alpha(\alpha+1): 0: 1-\alpha)^{T}} \\
& \quad=2\left(-\alpha+t u \alpha+t u \alpha^{2}+1\right)=0 \\
& {[2 t u: t+u: 2](\alpha(\alpha-1): 0: \alpha+1)^{T}} \\
& \quad=2\left(\alpha-t u \alpha+t u \alpha^{2}+1\right)=0
\end{aligned}
$$

Since we work over a field not of characteristic two, the conditions are equivalent to the previous ones.

Given a point $p_{0}$ on the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$, we define the conjugate points $n_{1}, n_{2}$ as the second meets of the focal lines $R_{1}$ and $R_{2}$ with the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ respectively. Since one meet is known, solving the quadratic equations is straightforward and yields
$n_{1}=\left[(\alpha+1)^{2}: t \alpha\left(1-\alpha^{2}\right): t^{2} \alpha^{2}(\alpha-1)^{2}\right]$
$n_{2}=\left[(\alpha-1)^{2}: t \alpha\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right): t^{2} \alpha^{2}(\alpha+1)^{2}\right]$.


Figure 20: Focal conjugates $n_{1}$ and $n_{2}$
The dual lines are the conjugate lines;
$N_{1} \equiv n_{1}^{\perp}=\left\langle\alpha(\alpha+1)^{2}: t\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)^{2}:-t^{2} \alpha(\alpha-1)^{2}\right\rangle$
$N_{2} \equiv n_{2}^{\perp}=\left\langle-\alpha(\alpha-1)^{2}: t\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)^{2}: t^{2} \alpha(\alpha+1)^{2}\right\rangle$.
Theorem 28 (Conjugate points parameter) Let $p_{0} \equiv$ $p(t)$ be a point on the parabola $\mathscr{P}_{0}$, then the point $p(u)$ is the conjugate point $n_{1}$ of $p_{0}$ with respect to the focus $f_{1}$ precisely when $u=-\frac{\alpha+1}{\alpha t(\alpha-1)}$, while $p(u)$ is the conjugate point $n_{2}$ of $p_{0}$ with respect to the focus $f_{2}$ precisely when $u=\frac{\alpha-1}{\alpha t(\alpha+1)}$.
Proof. Let $p_{0}=\left[t^{2}: t: 1\right]$ and $p(u)=\left[u^{2}: u: 1\right]$ lie on $\mathcal{P}_{0}$. Then, the line $p_{0} q_{0}=\langle 1:-(t+u): t u\rangle$ is a focal line with respect to the focus $f_{1}$ when it passes through the focus $f_{1}$ and then we have
$[1:-(t+u): t u][\alpha+1: 0: \alpha(\alpha-1)]^{T}=0 \quad$ so that
$\alpha-t u \alpha+t u \alpha^{2}+1=0$.
This gives the condition $u=-\frac{\alpha+1}{\alpha t(\alpha-1)}$. Similarly, the other direction is straightforward.
When the line $p_{0} q_{0}=\langle 1:-(t+u): t u\rangle$ is a focal line with respect to the focus $f_{2}$, then the focal line passes through the focus $f_{2}$ and we have
$[1:-(t+u): t u][1-\alpha: 0: \alpha(\alpha+1)]^{T}=0 \quad$ so that $-\alpha+t u \alpha+t u \alpha^{2}+1=0$.

This gives the condition $u=\frac{\alpha-1}{\alpha t(\alpha+1)}$. Similarly, the other direction is straightforward.

### 4.5 Quadrance cross ratios

Theorem 29 (Quadrance cross ratio) Suppose that $a, b, c, d$ are a harmonic range of points on a line $L$ in UHG. Then
$\frac{q(a, c)}{q(a, d)}=\frac{q(b, c)}{q(b, d)}$.
Proof. We know from projective geometry that a harmonic range of points $a, b, c, d$ in the projective space can be realized as $[v],[u],[\alpha v+\beta u],[\alpha v-\beta u]$ for two vectors $v$ and $u$ and two scalars $\alpha$ and $\beta$. Then using the short hand notation $v^{2} \equiv v \cdot v$ and $u v=u \cdot v$, we calculate that

$$
\begin{aligned}
q([v],[\alpha v+\beta u]) & =1-\frac{(v \cdot(\alpha v+\beta u))^{2}}{(v \cdot v)((\alpha v+\beta u) \cdot(\alpha v+\beta u))} \\
& =\frac{v^{2}\left(\alpha^{2} v^{2}+2 \alpha \beta(u v)+\beta^{2} u^{2}\right)-\left(\alpha v^{2}+\beta u v\right)^{2}}{v^{2}\left(\alpha^{2} v^{2}+2 \alpha \beta(u v)+\beta^{2} u^{2}\right)} \\
& =\frac{\beta^{2}\left(u^{2} v^{2}-(u v)^{2}\right)}{v^{2}\left(\alpha^{2} v^{2}+2 \alpha \beta(u v)+\beta^{2} u^{2}\right)}
\end{aligned}
$$

and similarly

$$
\begin{aligned}
q([u],[\alpha v+\beta u]) & =1-\frac{(u \cdot(\alpha v+\beta u))^{2}}{(u \cdot u)((\alpha v+\beta u) \cdot(\alpha v+\beta u))} \\
& =\frac{u^{2}\left(\alpha^{2} v^{2}+2 \alpha \beta(u v)+\beta^{2} u^{2}\right)-\left(\alpha(u v)+\beta u^{2}\right)^{2}}{u^{2}\left(\alpha^{2} v^{2}+2 \alpha \beta(u v)+\beta^{2} u^{2}\right)} \\
& =\frac{\alpha^{2}\left(u^{2} v^{2}-(u v)^{2}\right)}{u^{2}\left(\alpha^{2} v^{2}+2 \alpha \beta(u v)+\beta^{2} u^{2}\right)} .
\end{aligned}
$$

It follows that
$\frac{q(a, c)}{q(b, c)}=\frac{q([v],[\alpha v+\beta u])}{q([u],[\alpha v+\beta u])}=\frac{\beta^{2} u^{2}}{\alpha^{2} v^{2}}$.
But this quantity is then unchanged if we replaced $\alpha$ with $-\alpha$, or $\beta$ with $-\beta$.

Theorem 30 (Conjugate cross ratios) Let $p_{0}$ be a point on the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$, with $n_{1}$ and $n_{2}$ the focal conjugates and $u_{1}$ and $u_{2}$ the meets of $R_{2}$ and $R_{1}$ with the directrices $F_{1}$ and $F_{2}$ respectively. Then
$\frac{q\left(p_{0}, f_{1}\right)}{q\left(f_{1}, n_{1}\right)}=\frac{q\left(p_{0}, u_{2}\right)}{q\left(u_{2}, n_{1}\right)} \quad$ and $\quad \frac{q\left(p_{0}, f_{2}\right)}{q\left(f_{2}, n_{2}\right)}=\frac{q\left(p_{0}, u_{1}\right)}{q\left(u_{1}, n_{2}\right)}$.
Proof. From the Focus directrix polarity theorem, we know that $f_{2}$ and $F_{1}$ are a pole-polar pair with respect to the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$. Hence $f_{1}, u_{2} ; p_{0}, n_{1}$ is a harmonic range. From the previous theorem, that implies that

$$
\frac{q\left(p_{0}, f_{1}\right)}{q\left(f_{1}, n_{1}\right)}=\frac{q\left(p_{0}, u_{2}\right)}{q\left(u_{2}, n_{1}\right)} .
$$

The other relation follows similarly since $f_{2}, u_{1} ; p_{0}, n_{2}$ is also a harmonic range of points.

### 4.6 Spreads related to chords of a parabola

Theorem 31 (Polar point spreads) If the tangents $P^{0}$ and $Q^{0}$ at the points $p_{0} \equiv p(t)$ and $q_{0} \equiv p(u)$ lying on the parabola $\mathscr{P}_{0}$ meet at the polar point $z$, then $S\left(f_{1} p_{0}, f_{1} z\right)=$ $S\left(f_{1} q_{0}, f_{1} z\right)$ and $S\left(f_{2} p_{0}, f_{2} z\right)=S\left(f_{2} q_{0}, f_{2} z\right)$.

Proof. Suppose that $p_{0} \equiv\left[t^{2}: t: 1\right]$ and $q_{0} \equiv\left[u^{2}: u: 1\right]$ are on the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$. Then $z=[2 t u: t+u: 2]$ and we calculate

$$
\begin{aligned}
S\left(f_{1} p_{0}, f_{1} z\right) & =\frac{\alpha(t-u)^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)}{\left(\alpha+\alpha^{2} t^{2}-\alpha t^{2}+1\right)\left(\alpha+\alpha^{2} u^{2}-\alpha u^{2}+1\right)} \\
& =\frac{\alpha(t-u)^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)}{\Delta_{3}(t) \Delta_{3}(u)}=S\left(f_{1} q_{0}, f_{1} z\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
S\left(f_{2} p_{0}, f_{2} z\right) & =\frac{\alpha\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)(t-u)^{2}}{\left(\alpha-u^{2} \alpha^{2}-u^{2} \alpha-1\right)\left(-\alpha+t^{2} \alpha^{2}+t^{2} \alpha+1\right)} \\
& =\frac{-\alpha\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)(t-u)^{2}}{\Delta_{4}(t) \Delta_{4}(u)}=S\left(f_{2} q_{0}, f_{2} z\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$



Figure 21: The polar point $z$ of the chord $\overline{p_{0} q_{0}}$
Theorem 32 (Chord directrix meets) Let $p_{0} \equiv p(t)$ and $q_{0} \equiv p(u)$ be two points on a parabola $\mathscr{P}_{0}$. Let $z$ be the polar point of the chord $\overline{p_{0} q_{0}}$, and $x_{1} \equiv F_{1}\left(p_{0} q_{0}\right)$ and $x_{2} \equiv F_{2}\left(p_{0} q_{0}\right)$. Then i) $f_{1} z \perp f_{1} x_{2}$, ii) $f_{2} z \perp f_{2} x_{1}$ and iii) $S\left(x_{1} z, z f_{2}\right)=S\left(x_{2} z, z f_{1}\right)$.

Proof. We suppose as usual that $p_{0}=\left[t^{2}: t: 1\right]$ and $q_{0}=\left[u^{2}: u: 1\right]$. Then
i) We compute that

$$
\begin{aligned}
x_{2} & \equiv F_{2}\left(p_{0} q_{0}\right) \\
& =\left\langle\alpha^{2}(\alpha-1): 0: \alpha(1+\alpha)\right\rangle \times\langle 1:-(t+u): t u\rangle \\
& =\left[(\alpha+1)(t+u): \alpha+t u \alpha-t u \alpha^{2}+1:-\alpha(\alpha-1)(t+u)\right] .
\end{aligned}
$$

Also

$$
\begin{aligned}
f_{1} z=\langle & -\alpha(\alpha-1)(t+v): 2\left(-\alpha-t v \alpha+t v \alpha^{2}-1\right) \\
& :(\alpha+1)(t+v)\rangle \\
f_{1} x_{2}=\langle & \alpha(\alpha-1)\left(-\alpha-t v \alpha+t v \alpha^{2}-1\right): 2 \alpha\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)(t+v) \\
& \left.:(\alpha+1)\left(\alpha+t v \alpha-t v \alpha^{2}+1\right)\right\rangle
\end{aligned}
$$

and so we may verify that

$$
\begin{aligned}
0= & \left\langle-\alpha(\alpha-1)(t+v): 2\left(-\alpha-t v \alpha+t v \alpha^{2}-1\right)\right. \\
& :(\alpha+1)(t+v)\rangle D \times \\
& \langle\alpha \\
& (\alpha-1)\left(-\alpha-t v \alpha+t v \alpha^{2}-1\right): 2 \alpha\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)(t+v) \\
& \left.:(\alpha+1)\left(\alpha+t v \alpha-t v \alpha^{2}+1\right)\right\rangle^{T} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus
$S\left(f_{1} z, f_{1} x_{2}\right)=1$.
ii) Similarly

$$
\begin{aligned}
x_{1} & \equiv F_{1}\left(p_{0} q_{0}\right)=\langle\alpha(\alpha+1): 0: 1-\alpha\rangle \times\langle 1:-(t+u): t u\rangle \\
& =\left[(\alpha-1)(t+u): \alpha+t u \alpha+t u \alpha^{2}-1: \alpha(\alpha+1)(t+u)\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

and the lines

$$
\begin{aligned}
& f_{2} z=\langle -\alpha(\alpha+1)(t+u): 2\left(\alpha+t u \alpha+t u \alpha^{2}-1\right) \\
&:-(\alpha-1)(t+u)\rangle \\
& f_{2} x_{1}=\left\langle\alpha(\alpha+1)\left(\alpha+t u \alpha+t u \alpha^{2}-1\right):-2 \alpha\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)(t+u)\right. \\
&\left.:(\alpha-1)\left(\alpha+t u \alpha+t u \alpha^{2}-1\right)\right\rangle
\end{aligned}
$$

are perpendicular, so that
$S\left(f_{2} z, f_{2} x_{1}\right)=1$.
iii) Another calculation shows that
$S\left(x_{1} z, z f_{2}\right)=\frac{1}{4} \frac{\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left((2 t u)^{2}-(t+u)^{2}\right) \alpha^{2}+(t+u)^{2}-4}{\left(t^{2} u^{2}\right) \alpha^{4}+\left((t+u)^{2}-\left(t^{2} u^{2}+1\right)\right) \alpha^{2}+1}$
$=S\left(x_{2} z, z f_{1}\right)$.


Figure 22: Chord directrix meets $x_{1}$ and $x_{2}$
In Figure 22 we see the two triangles $\overline{f_{1} z x_{2}}$ and $\overline{f_{2} z x_{1}}$, which are both right triangles sharing a common spread.

Theorem 33 (Tangent directrix meets) If the two tangents $P^{0}$ and $Q^{0}$ to a parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ at $p_{0} \equiv p(t)$ and $q_{0} \equiv p(u)$ respectively meet the directrix $F_{1}$ at $s_{1}$ and $s_{1}^{\prime}$ respectively, and meet $F_{2}$ at $s_{2}$ and $s_{2}^{\prime}$ respectively, then $S\left(f_{1} p_{0}, f_{1} q_{0}\right)=S\left(f_{1} s_{2}, f_{1} s_{2}^{\prime}\right)$ and $S\left(f_{2} p_{0}, f_{2} q_{0}\right)=$ $S\left(f_{2} s_{1}, f_{2} s_{1}^{\prime}\right)$.
Proof. Suppose that $p_{0} \equiv\left[t^{2}: t: 1\right]$ and $q_{0} \equiv\left[u^{2}: u: 1\right]$ are on the parabola $\mathscr{P}_{0}$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
S\left(f_{1} p_{0}, f_{1} q_{0}\right) & =\frac{4 \alpha\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)(t-u)^{2}\left(\alpha+\alpha^{2} t u-\alpha t u+1\right)^{2}}{\Delta_{3}^{2}(t) \Delta_{3}^{2}(u)} \\
& =S\left(f_{1} s_{2}, f_{1} s_{2}^{\prime}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Also, we have that
$S\left(f_{2} p_{0}, f_{2} q_{0}\right)$

$$
=\frac{-4 \alpha\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)(t-u)^{2}\left(-\alpha+t u \alpha+t u \alpha^{2}+1\right)^{2}}{\Delta_{4}^{2}(t) \Delta_{4}^{2}(u)}
$$

$$
=S\left(f_{2} s_{1}, f_{2} s_{1}^{\prime}\right)
$$



Figure 23: Tangent directrix meets $s_{1}$ and $s_{2}$
Recall that in universal hyperbolic geometry, a triangle may have four circumcircles.

Theorem 34 (Two tangents circumcircle) Suppose that the two points $p_{0} \equiv p(t)$ and $q_{0} \equiv p(u)$ on a parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ have respective altitude base points $t_{1}, t_{2}$ and $t_{1}^{\prime}, t_{2}^{\prime}$ on $F_{1}, F_{2}$ respectively, and that their tangents meet at the polar point $z$. Then $z$ is a circumcenter of both the triangles $\overline{t_{1} f_{2} t_{1}^{\prime}}$ and $\overline{t_{2} f_{1} t_{2}^{\prime}}$. In particular $q\left(t_{1}, z\right)=q\left(t_{1}^{\prime}, z\right)=q\left(z, f_{2}\right)$ and $q\left(t_{2}, z\right)=q\left(t_{2}^{\prime}, z\right)=q\left(z, f_{1}\right)$.

Proof. Suppose that $p_{0} \equiv\left[t^{2}: t: 1\right]$ and $q_{0} \equiv\left[u^{2}: u: 1\right]$ are on the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$, then,

$$
\begin{aligned}
q\left(z, f_{2}\right) & =q([2 t u: t+u: 2],[1-\alpha: 0: \alpha(\alpha+1)]) \\
& =\frac{\Delta_{4}(t) \Delta_{4}(u)}{\alpha\left(\left(4 t^{2} u^{2}-(t+u)^{2}\right) \alpha^{2}+(t+u)^{2}-4\right)} \\
& =q\left(z, t_{1}\right)=q\left(z, t_{1}^{\prime}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence $z$ is a circumcenter of the triangle $\overline{t_{1} f_{2} t_{1}^{\prime}}$. Similarly, $z$ is the circumcenter of the triangle $\overline{t_{2} f_{1} t_{2}^{\prime}}$ since

$$
\begin{aligned}
q\left(z, f_{1}\right) & =q([2 t u: t+u: 2],[\alpha+1: 0: \alpha(\alpha-1)]) \\
& =-\frac{\Delta_{3}(t) \Delta_{3}(u)}{\alpha\left(\left(4 t^{2} u^{2}-(t+u)^{2}\right) \alpha^{2}+(t+u)^{2}-4\right)} \\
& =q\left(z, t_{2}\right)=q\left(z, t_{2}^{\prime}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$



Figure 24: Two points and polar circles
In Figure 24 we see the polar point of $\overline{p_{0} p_{0}^{\prime}}$ together with the two polar circles centered at $z$ through the foci.

Corollary 2 If the tangents at $p_{0} \equiv p(t)$ and $q_{0} \equiv p(u)$ on $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ meet at $z$ then the line $f_{1} z$ is a midline of the side $\overline{t_{1} t_{1}^{\prime}}$ and similarly $f_{2} z$ is a midline of the side $\overline{t_{2} t_{2}^{\prime}}$.

Proof. This follows immediately from the previous theorem, since $f_{1} z$ is the altitude from $z$ to the directrix $F_{1}$, so it bisects the chord $\overline{t_{1} t_{1}^{\prime}}$.

Theorem 35 (Opposite triangle spreads) If the tangents at $p_{0} \equiv p(t)$ and $q_{0} \equiv p(u)$ on $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ meet at $z$, then $S\left(z p_{0}, z f_{1}\right)=S\left(z q_{0}, z f_{2}\right)$ and $S\left(z p_{0}, z f_{2}\right)=S\left(z q_{0}, z f_{1}\right)$.

Proof. Using the Spread formula, we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
S\left(z p_{0}, z f_{2}\right) & =-\frac{\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(\left(4 t^{2} u^{2}-(t+u)^{2}\right) \alpha^{2}+(t+u)^{2}-4\right)}{4 \Delta_{4}(u) \Delta_{3}(t)} \\
& =S\left(z q_{0}, z f_{1}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
S\left(z p_{0}, z f_{1}\right) & =-\frac{\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(\left(4 t^{2} u^{2}-(t+u)^{2}\right) \alpha^{2}+(t+u)^{2}-4\right)}{4 \Delta_{3}(u) \Delta_{4}(t)} \\
& =S\left(z q_{0}, z f_{2}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$



Figure 25: Opposite triangle spreads

## 5 Normals to the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$

In the Euclidean case, it is well known that the evolute of the parabola, which is defined as the locus of the center of curvature of the curve-namely the meet of adjacent normals, as Huygens or Newton would have said-is a semicubical parabola. For the curve $y=x^{2}$, shown in Figure 26, the evolute has equation
$\left(y-\frac{1}{2}\right)^{3}=\frac{27}{16} x^{2}$.
This formula suggests that there is no Euclidean ruler and compass construction for the center of curvature $C_{0}$ of the parabola for a general point $P_{0}$ on it. We will see that in the hyperbolic case, the situation is in some ways simpler, and indeed we will show how to give a straightedge construction for the center of curvature!


Figure 26: Evolute of a Euclidean parabola
In Figure 26 we see a point $P_{0}$ on the Euclidean parabola, with its tangent $p^{0}$, obtained by finding the meet $S$ of the directrix $f$ with the altitude to the focal line $r=F P_{0}$ through the focus $F$. The center of curvature is the point $C_{0}$
on the evolute $\mathcal{E}$. The figure shows also that for points $L$ above the evolute, there are three normals that meet there; we exhibit also the other two points marked $P$ whose normals also pass through $L$. Below the evolute only one normal passes through any fixed point.
For a point $p_{0}$ on the hyperbolic parabola $\mathscr{P}_{0}$, the altitude line $P$ to the tangent $P^{0}$ through $p_{0}$ is called the normal line at $p_{0}$.
Since the dual of $P^{0}$ is the twin point $p^{0}$, we see that

$$
\begin{align*}
P \equiv & p_{0} p^{0}=\left[t^{2}: t: 1\right] \times\left[\alpha^{2}-1: 2 t \alpha^{2}:-t^{2} \alpha^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)\right] \\
= & \left\langle-t \alpha^{2}\left(t^{2} \alpha^{2}-t^{2}+2\right):\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(t^{4} \alpha^{2}+1\right)\right. \\
& \left.: t\left(2 t^{2} \alpha^{2}-\alpha^{2}+1\right)\right\rangle . \tag{15}
\end{align*}
$$

By symmetry, this means that $P$ is both the normal line to the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ at $p_{0}$ as well as the normal line to the twin parabola $\mathscr{P}^{0}$ at $p^{0}$.
The meet of $P$ and the axis $A$ is the point

$$
\begin{aligned}
n \equiv & P A \\
= & \left\langle-t \alpha^{2}\left(t^{2} \alpha^{2}-t^{2}+2\right):\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(t^{4} \alpha^{2}+1\right)\right. \\
& \left.: t\left(2 t^{2} \alpha^{2}-\alpha^{2}+1\right)\right\rangle \times\langle 0: 1: 0\rangle \\
= & {\left[t\left(2 t^{2} \alpha^{2}-\alpha^{2}+1\right): 0: t \alpha^{2}\left(t^{2} \alpha^{2}-t^{2}+2\right)\right] } \\
= & {\left[2 t^{2} \alpha^{2}-\alpha^{2}+1: 0: \alpha^{2}\left(t^{2} \alpha^{2}-t^{2}+2\right)\right] }
\end{aligned}
$$

provided that $t \neq 0$. Since the normal $P$ of is perpendicular to the tangent $P^{0}$, and since $P^{0}$ is a biline of the vertex $\overline{R_{1} R_{2}}$, the normal $P$ is the other biline for the vertex $\overline{R_{1} R_{2}}$. In fact we may calculate that
$S\left(R_{1}, P\right)=S\left(P, R_{2}\right)=\frac{t^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}+1\right)^{2}}{-\Delta_{3} \Delta_{4}}$.

### 5.1 Conjugate normals and conics

Recall that the conjugate points $n_{1}, n_{2}$ of $p_{0}$ are the second meets of the focal lines $R_{1} \equiv f_{1} p_{0}$ and $R_{2} \equiv f_{2} p_{0}$ with the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ respectively. They are given in (14). The normal lines to $\mathscr{P}_{0}$ at the conjugate points $n_{1}$ and $n_{2}$ can then be computed using the formula (15):

$$
\begin{aligned}
& P_{1} \equiv\left\langle t \alpha(\alpha-1)\left(2 \alpha^{2}(\alpha-1) t^{2}+(\alpha+1)^{3}\right)\right. \\
&: \alpha^{2}(\alpha-1)^{4} t^{4}+(\alpha+1)^{4} \\
&\left.:-t \alpha(\alpha+1)\left(2(\alpha+1)-(\alpha-1)^{3} t^{2}\right)\right\rangle \\
& P_{2} \equiv\left\langle-t \alpha(\alpha+1)\left(2 \alpha^{2}(\alpha+1) t^{2}+(\alpha-1)^{3}\right)\right. \\
&: \alpha^{2}(\alpha+1)^{4} t^{4}+(\alpha-1)^{4} \\
&\left.: t \alpha(\alpha-1)\left(2(\alpha-1)-(\alpha+1)^{3} t^{2}\right)\right\rangle .
\end{aligned}
$$

We will call these the conjugate normal lines of $p_{0}$.

Theorem 36 (Conjugate normal conics) There are two conics $\mathcal{H}_{1}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{2}$ with the following properties. Let $h_{1}$ be the meet of the normal $P$ and the conjugate normal $P_{1}$ of a point $p_{0}$ on $\mathcal{P}_{0}$. Then $h_{1}$ lies on $\mathcal{H}_{1}$, which passes through $f_{2}$ and is tangent to $B_{1}$ there. Similarly if $h_{2}$ is the meet of $P$ and $P_{2}$ at $p_{0}$, then $h_{2}$ lies on $\mathcal{H}_{2}$, which passes through $f_{1}$ and is tangent to $B_{2}$ there. Furthermore we have collinearities $\left[\left[f_{1} s_{2} h_{2}\right]\right]$ as well as $\left[\left[f_{2} s_{1} h_{1}\right]\right]$. In addition $\mathcal{H}_{1}$ passes through the points $d_{0}$ and $\overline{d_{0}}$.

Proof. The conjugate normal $P_{1}$ will meet the normal $P$ at

$$
\begin{aligned}
& h_{1} \equiv P P_{1}= \\
& \quad\left[-\alpha^{2}(\alpha-1)^{3} t^{4}+4 \alpha^{2}(\alpha+1) t^{2}-(\alpha-1)(\alpha+1)^{2}: t \alpha\left(\alpha^{2}+1\right) \Delta_{1}\right. \\
& \left.\quad: \alpha\left(\alpha^{2}(\alpha+1)(\alpha-1)^{2} t^{4}+4 \alpha^{2}(\alpha-1) t^{2}+(\alpha+1)^{3}\right)\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

A computation shows this point always lies on the conic $\mathcal{H}_{1}$ with equation

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \alpha^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(1+4 \alpha+\alpha^{2}\right) x^{2} \\
& \quad+2 \alpha\left(1-2 \alpha-\alpha^{2}\right)\left(1+2 \alpha-\alpha^{2}\right) x z \\
& \quad+32 \alpha^{3} y^{2}+\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(1-4 \alpha+\alpha^{2}\right) z^{2}=0
\end{aligned}
$$

The conjugate normal $P_{2}$ will meet the normal $P$ at

$$
\begin{aligned}
& h_{2} \equiv P P_{2}= \\
& \qquad \quad\left[\alpha^{2}(\alpha+1)^{3} t^{4}-4 \alpha^{2}(\alpha-1) t^{2}+(\alpha+1)(\alpha-1)^{2}\right. \\
& \quad: t \alpha\left(\alpha^{2}+1\right) \Delta_{2} \\
& \left.\quad: \alpha\left(\alpha^{2}(\alpha-1)(\alpha+1)^{2} t^{4}+4 \alpha^{2}(\alpha+1) t^{2}+(\alpha-1)^{3}\right)\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

This point always lies on the conic $\mathcal{H}_{2}$ with equation

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \alpha^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(1-4 \alpha+\alpha^{2}\right) x^{2} \\
& \quad-2 \alpha\left(2 \alpha+\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(-2 \alpha+\alpha^{2}-1\right) x z \\
& \quad-32 \alpha^{3} y^{2}+\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(1+4 \alpha+\alpha^{2}\right) z^{2}=0
\end{aligned}
$$

The collinearity $\left[\left[f_{1} s_{1} h_{2}\right]\right]$ is established by checking that the determinant formed by the respective vectors is indeed 0 (it is!), and similarly for the collinearity $\left[\left[f_{2} s_{2} h_{1}\right]\right]$. We can also check (with a computer package) that both of the points $d_{0}$ and $\overline{d_{0}}$ identically satisfy the equation of $\mathcal{H}_{1}$.

The normal $P$ at $p_{0}$ meets the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ again at a second point

$$
\begin{aligned}
p_{0}^{\prime}=[ & \left(2 t^{2} \alpha^{2}-\alpha^{2}+1\right)^{2}: t \alpha^{2}\left(-t^{2} \alpha^{2}+t^{2}-2\right)\left(2 t^{2} \alpha^{2}-\alpha^{2}+1\right) \\
& \left.: t^{2} \alpha^{4}\left(t^{2} \alpha^{2}-t^{2}+2\right)^{2}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

and similarly the conjugate normals $P_{1}, P_{2}$ at $n_{1}, n_{2}$ meet $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ respectively also at
$n_{1}^{\prime}=\left[t^{2} \alpha^{2}\left((\alpha-1)^{3} t^{2}-2(\alpha+1)\right)^{2}\right.$

$$
: t \alpha\left(2(\alpha+1)-(\alpha-1)^{3} t^{2}\right)\left(2 \alpha^{2}(\alpha-1) t^{2}+(\alpha+1)^{3}\right)
$$

$$
\left.:\left(2 \alpha^{2}(\alpha-1) t^{2}+(\alpha+1)^{3}\right)^{2}\right]
$$

$$
n_{2}^{\prime}=\left[t^{2} \alpha^{2}\left((\alpha+1)^{3} t^{2}+2(1-\alpha)\right)^{2}\right.
$$

$$
:\left(2 \alpha^{2}(\alpha+1) t^{2}+(\alpha-1)^{3}\right)\left(\alpha(\alpha+1)^{3} t^{3}-2 \alpha(\alpha-1) t\right)
$$

$$
\left.:\left(2 \alpha^{2}(\alpha+1) t^{2}+(\alpha-1)^{3}\right)^{2}\right]
$$



Figure 27: Conjugate normal meets $h_{1}$ and $h_{2}$ and conics
Theorem 37 (Normal conjugate colliearities) Let $p_{0}^{\prime}, n_{1}^{\prime}$ and $n_{2}^{\prime}$ be the second meets of the normals and conjugate normals $P, P_{1}$ and $P_{2}$ of $p_{0}$ with the parabola $P_{0}$ respectively, and $t_{1}, t_{2}$ the altitude base points of $p_{0}$. Then we have collinearities $\left[\left[p_{0}^{\prime} n_{1}^{\prime} t_{1}\right]\right]$ and $\left[\left[p_{0}^{\prime} n_{2}^{\prime} t_{2}\right]\right]$.

Proof. Since the forms of all the points involved are known, it is straightforward (with a computer package) to verify that the corresponding determinants for both collinearities do evaluate identically to 0 .

These collinearities are illustrated in Figure 28.


Figure 28: Normal conjugate collinearities

### 5.2 Four points with concurrent normals

In the Euclidean case, finding the three points $P$ on the parabola whose normals pass through a given point $L$ above the evolute is not straightforward [8]. We will show that in the hyperbolic case there is an interesting conic, related to the elementary symmetric functions of four variables $t_{1}, t_{2}, t_{3}, t_{4}$, that allows us to find four such points.

Theorem 38 (Four parabola normals) If $l$ is a point in the hyperbolic plane, then there are at most four points $p$ on the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ whose normals pass through $l$.

Proof. We know that the normal to $p_{0}=\left[t^{2}: t: 1\right]$ is the line

$$
\begin{aligned}
P=\langle & \left\langle t \alpha^{2}\left(-t^{2} \alpha^{2}+t^{2}-2\right):\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(t^{4} \alpha^{2}+1\right)\right. \\
& \left.: t\left(2 t^{2} \alpha^{2}-\alpha^{2}+1\right)\right\rangle .
\end{aligned}
$$

If $P$ passes through a point $l=\left[x_{0}: y_{0}: z_{0}\right]$, then $l P=0$, which after rearranging is the equation

$$
\begin{align*}
& \alpha^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right) y_{0} t^{4}+\alpha^{2}\left(\left(1-\alpha^{2}\right) x_{0}+2 z_{0}\right) t^{3} \\
& \quad+\left(\left(1-\alpha^{2}\right) z_{0}-2 \alpha^{2} x_{0}\right) t+\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right) y_{0}=0 \tag{16}
\end{align*}
$$

This is a polynomial of degree four in $t$, so it has at most four solutions.

Theorem 39 (Quadratric normal meets) Suppose $p_{0}=$ $p(t)$ and $q_{0}=p(u)$ are two points on the parabola, whose respective normals $P$ and $Q$ meet at a point $l$, and suppose $\alpha^{2}+1 \neq 0$. Then there are 0,1 or 2 other points on the parabola whose normals pass through $l$ precisely when $\nabla=\left(t^{2} u^{2} \alpha^{2}+1\right)^{2}-4 t u \alpha^{2}(t+u)^{2}$ is not a square, is zero, or is a non-zero square respectively.
Proof. The meet of the two normals is

$$
\begin{aligned}
& l \equiv P Q= \\
& {\left[\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(\left(t u\left(2 t^{2} u^{2}-t u-t^{2}-u^{2}\right)\right) \alpha^{4}+\left((t u-2)\left(t u+t^{2}+u^{2}\right)+1\right) \alpha^{2}-1\right)\right.} \\
& :-t u \alpha^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}+1\right)^{2}(t+u) \\
& \left.: \alpha^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(t^{3} u^{3} \alpha^{4}+\left((2 t u-1)\left(t u+t^{2}+u^{2}\right)-t^{3} u^{3}\right) \alpha^{2}+\left(t^{2}+t u+u^{2}-2\right)\right)\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

and we need to check when a third point $r_{0} \equiv p(v)$ on $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ has a normal $R$ also passing through $l$. This is equivalent to $l R=0$ which yields, after remarkable simplification,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& -\alpha^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(\alpha^{2}+1\right)^{2}(u-v)(t-v) \\
& \quad \cdot\left(t+u+v+t u^{2} v^{2} \alpha^{2}+t^{2} u v^{2} \alpha^{2}+t^{2} u^{2} v \alpha^{2}\right)=0
\end{aligned}
$$

Since $\alpha \neq 0, \pm 1$ and $u, t, v$ are disjoint, this condition reduces to the quadratic equation $t u \alpha^{2}(t+u) v^{2}+$ $\left(t^{2} u^{2} \alpha^{2}+1\right) v+(t+u)=0$ in $v$ with discriminant
$\nabla=\left(t^{2} u^{2} \alpha^{2}+1\right)^{2}-4 t u \alpha^{2}(t+u)^{2}$.

The question of the existence of four points on the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ with a common normal point is closely related to an interesting conic associated to four points on the parabola; namely the conic $\mathcal{A}$ through those four points and the axis point $a$, which has independent interest due to its form. We call this conic $\mathcal{A}\left(p_{1}, p_{2}, p_{3}, p_{4}\right)$ the four-point conic through $p_{1}, p_{2}, p_{3}$ and $p_{4}$.

Theorem 40 (Four point conic) For any four points $p_{1} \equiv$ $p(t), p_{2} \equiv p(u), p_{3} \equiv p(v)$ and $p_{4} \equiv p(w)$ lying on $\mathcal{P}_{0}$, the four-point conic $\mathcal{A}\left(p_{1}, p_{2}, p_{3}, p_{4}\right)$ has equation

$$
\begin{align*}
0= & x^{2}-(t+u+v+w) x y+(t u+t v+t w+u v+u w+v w) x z \\
& -(t u v+t u w+t v w+u v w) y z+t u v w z^{2} . \tag{17}
\end{align*}
$$

Proof. We use a standard technique for computing a conic through five given points: by taking a combination of the degenerate line products formed by pairs of four points $p_{1}, p_{2}, p_{3}$ and $p_{4}$. Now

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
p_{1} p_{2}=(1:-(t+u): t u) & p_{3} p_{4}=(1:-(v+w): v w) \\
p_{1} p_{3}=(1:-(t+v): t v) & p_{2} p_{4}=(1:-(t+w): t w)
\end{array}
$$

so the general conic in the pencil through $p_{1}, p_{2}, p_{3}$ and $p_{4}$, has the form

$$
\begin{aligned}
0= & p(x, y, z)=(x-(t+u) y+t u z)(x-(v+w) y+v w z) \\
& +\lambda(x-(t+v) y+t v z)(x-(u+w) y+u w z) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Now since also $p(0,1,0)=0$, we can solve for $\lambda$ to get
$\lambda=-\frac{(t+u)(v+w)}{(t+v)(u+w)}$.
Substituting back and simplifying, we find that the equation of the required conic is (17).


Figure 29: Four points $p$ with normals through $l$ and associated conic $\mathcal{A}$

There is a clear similarity between the form of this conic and the familiar identity

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left(x-t_{1}\right)\left(x-t_{2}\right)\left(x-t_{3}\right)\left(x-t_{4}\right)=x^{4}-\left(t_{1}+t_{2}+t_{3}+t_{4}\right) x^{3} \\
& \quad+\left(t_{1} t_{2}+t_{1} t_{3}+t_{1} t_{4}+t_{2} t_{3}+t_{2} t_{4}+t_{3} t_{4}\right) x^{2} \\
& \quad-\left(t_{1} t_{2} t_{3}+t_{1} t_{2} t_{4}+t_{1} t_{3} t_{4}+t_{2} t_{3} t_{4}\right) x+t_{1} t_{2} t_{3} t_{4}
\end{aligned}
$$

relating the coefficients of a degree four polynomial and the elementary symmetric functions of its zeros. This may be explained by noting that if $p=[x: y: z]=\left[t^{2}: t: 1\right]$ is a point on the parabola, then the quantities $x^{2}, x y, x z, y z$ and $z^{2}$ are respectively exactly $t^{4}, t^{3}, t^{2}, t$ and 1 , while the condition that the conic passes through $a$ ensures that the coefficient of $y^{2}$ is necessarily 0 .

### 5.3 The conic $\mathscr{A}_{n}$ and finding normals

Theorem 41 (Four normal conic) Suppose that the normal lines at four points $p_{1}, p_{2}, p_{3}, p_{4}$ lying on $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ are concurrent at a point $l=\left[x_{0}, y_{0}, z_{0}\right]$ not lying on the axis $A$. Then the conic $\mathcal{A}_{l}$ with equation

$$
\begin{align*}
& \alpha^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right) y_{0} x^{2}+\alpha^{2}\left(x_{0}+2 z_{0}-x_{0} \alpha^{2}\right) x y \\
& \quad+\left(z_{0}-z_{0} \alpha^{2}-2 x_{0} \alpha^{2}\right) y z+\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right) y_{0} z^{2}=0 \tag{18}
\end{align*}
$$

passes through the six points $p_{1}, p_{2}, p_{3}, p_{4}, a$ and $l$, so in particular $\mathcal{A}_{l}=\mathcal{A}\left(p_{1}, p_{2}, p_{3}, p_{4}\right)$.
Proof. The condition (16) on $t$ for $p=\left[t^{2}: t: 1\right]$ on $\mathscr{P}_{0}$ to have a normal line passing through $l \equiv\left[x_{0}, y_{0}, z_{0}\right]$ may be rewritten, since $y_{0} \neq 0$, as
$t^{4}+\frac{\alpha^{2}\left(x_{0}\left(1-\alpha^{2}\right)+2 z_{0}\right)}{\alpha^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right) y_{0}} t^{3}+\frac{\left(z_{0}\left(1-\alpha^{2}\right)-2 x_{0} \alpha^{2}\right)}{\alpha^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right) y_{0}} t+\frac{1}{\alpha^{2}}=0$.
If we have four distinct solutions $t, u, v, w$ of this equation, then

$$
t+u+v+w=-\frac{\alpha^{2}\left(x_{0}\left(1-\alpha^{2}\right)+2 z_{0}\right)}{\alpha^{2} y_{0}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)}
$$

$t u+t v+t w+u v+u w+v w=0$

$$
\begin{aligned}
t u v+t u w+t v w+u v w & =-\frac{z_{0}\left(1-\alpha^{2}\right)-2 x_{0} \alpha^{2}}{\alpha^{2} y_{0}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)} \\
t u v w & =\frac{1}{\alpha^{2}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

From the previous theorem, the conic passing through the five points $p_{1}=p(t), p_{2}=p(u), p_{3}=p(v), p_{4}=p(w)$ and $a$ then has the form
$x^{2}+\frac{\alpha^{2}\left(x_{0}+2 z_{0}-x_{0} \alpha^{2}\right)}{\alpha^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right) y_{0}} x y+\frac{\left(z_{0}-2 x_{0} \alpha^{2}-z_{0} \alpha^{2}\right)}{\alpha^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right) y_{0}} y z+\frac{1}{\alpha^{2}} z^{2}=0$
which we can rewrite as the conic $\mathcal{A}_{l}(18)$. But now we can check that also $l$ lies on this conic, since identically

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \alpha^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right) y_{0} x_{0}^{2}+\alpha^{2}\left(x_{0}\left(1-\alpha^{2}\right)+2 z_{0}\right) x_{0} y_{0} \\
& \quad+\left(z_{0}\left(1-\alpha^{2}\right)-2 x_{0} \alpha^{2}\right) y_{0} z_{0}+\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right) y_{0} z_{0}^{2}=0
\end{aligned}
$$

## Theorem 42 (Conic construction of common normals)

Let $l$ be a point of the hyperbolic plane with the property that the dual line $L$ of $l$ meets $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ at two points $x$ and $y$. Then the meet $z$ of the tangent lines to $\mathscr{P}_{0}$ at $x$ and $y$, the meet $x^{\prime}$ of the tangent line at $x$ and the dual line of $x$, and the meet $y^{\prime}$ of the tangent line at $y$ and the dual line of $y$, all line on the conic $\mathcal{A}_{l}$.

Proof. Suppose that the dual line $L$ of $l$ meets $\mathscr{P}_{0}$ at two points $x=\left[t^{2}: t: 1\right]$ and $y=\left[u^{2}: u: 1\right]$. Then the meets of the tangent lines is $z=[2 t u: t+u: 2]$ from the Tangent meets theorem. Also $L=\langle 1:-(t+u): t u\rangle$ and
$l=\left[\alpha^{2}-1: \alpha^{2}(t+u):-\alpha^{2} t u\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)\right]$.
In this case the equation (18) for the conic $\mathcal{A}_{l}$ simplifies, after some cancellation, to

$$
\begin{align*}
& \alpha^{2}(t+u) x^{2}+\left(1-2 t u \alpha^{2}-\alpha^{2}\right) x y \\
& \quad+\left(t u \alpha^{2}-t u-2\right) y z+(t+u) z^{2}=0 \tag{19}
\end{align*}
$$

The dual line of $x$ meets the tangent line at $x$ at
$x^{\prime}=\left[t\left(\alpha^{2} t^{2}-t^{2}+2\right): \alpha^{2} t^{4}+1: t\left(2 \alpha^{2} t^{2}-\alpha^{2}+1\right)\right]$
and the dual line of $y$ meets the tangent line at $y$ at
$y^{\prime}=\left[u\left(\alpha^{2} u^{2}-u^{2}+2\right): \alpha^{2} u^{4}+1: u\left(2 \alpha^{2} u^{2}-\alpha^{2}+1\right)\right]$.
We check that both of these points identically satisfy the equation (19).


Figure 30: Construction of points $p$ on $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ with normals through n
This also provides us with an elegant method to find all normals through a given point $l$. Firstly, find the dual line $L$ of the point $l$ and then find the meets $x, y$ of this line $L$ with the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$. Construct the tangents $P_{x}, P_{y}$ to $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ at $x$ and $y$ and find their meet $z$. Construct the dual lines $X$ and $Y$ of $x$ and $y$, then find the meet of the tangent at $x$ and the dual line of $x$, that is $x^{\prime}=P_{x} X$ and the meet of the
tangent at $y$ and the dual line of $y$, that is $y^{\prime}=P_{y} Y$. According to the above theorem, the five points $l, x^{\prime}, y^{\prime}, z, a$ lie on a conic $A_{l}$ which may meet the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ in at most four points which have the property that their normals meet at $l$. We see that the number of normals passing through $l$ is determined by the meet of the conic $A_{l}$ with the parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$. So if we can find the meets of these two conics, we have the normals which pass through $l$.
This construction shows that some aspects of hyperbolic geometry are surprisingly more simple than in Euclidean geometry. In the latter, finding normals to points on a parabola from a particular point is quite cumbersome, as shown in [8].
Furthermore, the four normals drawn from a particular points are also the normals to four points on the twin parabola $\mathbb{P}^{0}$. These points are the dual points of the tangents to four points on the original parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$. This observation is the result of duality between lines and points.

### 5.4 Normal conjugate points

If $p_{0}$ is a point on $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ with tangent line $P^{0}$ and normal line $P$, then the other meet of $P$ with the parabola gives a point $p_{0}^{\prime}$, which we call the normal conjugate point of $p_{0}$. Then the tangent line $P^{0 \prime}$ to $p_{0}^{\prime}$ meets with $P^{0}$ at the point
$k_{0}=P^{0} P^{0 \prime}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
= & \left\langle t^{2} \alpha^{4}\left(t^{2} \alpha^{2}-t^{2}+2\right)^{2}: 2 t \alpha^{2}\left(t^{2} \alpha^{2}-t^{2}+2\right)\left(2 t^{2} \alpha^{2}-\alpha^{2}+1\right)\right. \\
& \left.:\left(2 t^{2} \alpha^{2}-\alpha^{2}+1\right)^{2}\right\rangle \times\left\langle 1:-2 t: t^{2}\right\rangle \\
= & {\left[-2 t\left(2 t^{2} \alpha^{2}-\alpha^{2}+1\right):\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(t^{4} \alpha^{2}+1\right): 2 t \alpha^{2}\left(t^{2} \alpha^{2}-t^{2}+2\right)\right] }
\end{aligned}
$$

Figure 31 shows the normal conjugate curve $\mathcal{K}_{0}$ : the locus of $k_{0}$ as $p_{0}$ moves. This a higher degree curve which passes through $a$ as well as $d_{0}$ and $\overline{d_{0}}$, and is tangent to $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ at those latter two points. It seems an interesting future direction to investigate more fully such associated algebraic curves connected with $\mathcal{P}_{0}$.


Figure 31: The normal conjugate conic $\mathcal{K}_{0}$

### 5.5 The evolute and centers of curvature

Recall that the evolute of a curve is the envelope of the normals to that curve, or equivalently the locus of the centers of curvature. Following the technique described in [4], here is a pleasant construction of the center of curvature $c_{0}$ to the hyperbolic parabola $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ at the point $p_{0}$.


Figure 32: Evolute of a parabola
Theorem 43 (Center of curvature construction) Let $P$ be the normal at $p_{0}$ to the parabola $\mathscr{P}_{0}$, and construct the altitude line $Q$ to $P$ through $n=A P$. Suppose that the meets of $Q$ with the focal lines $R_{1}$ and $R_{2}$ are respectively $x_{1}$ and $x_{2}$. Then the meet of the perpendicular line to $R_{1}$ through $x_{1}$ and the perpendicular line to $R_{2}$ through $x_{2}$ is the required center of curvature $c_{0}$ to $\mathcal{P}_{0}$ at the point $p_{0}$.

Proof. Let $p_{0}=\left[t^{2}: t: 1\right]$ and $n=\left[2 t^{2} \alpha^{2}-\alpha^{2}+1: 0\right.$ : $\left.\alpha^{2}\left(t^{2} \alpha^{2}-t^{2}+2\right)\right]$, then the perpendicular to $P$ through $l=n$ is

$$
\begin{aligned}
Q \equiv p n=[ & \alpha^{2}\left(t^{4} \alpha^{2}+1\right)\left(t^{2} \alpha^{2}-t^{2}+2\right) \\
& : t\left(2 \alpha-t^{2} \alpha-2 t^{2} \alpha^{2}+t^{2} \alpha^{3}+\alpha^{2}-1\right) \\
& \cdot\left(-2 \alpha+t^{2} \alpha-2 t^{2} \alpha^{2}-t^{2} \alpha^{3}+\alpha^{2}-1\right) \\
& \left.:\left(t^{4} \alpha^{2}+1\right)\left(-2 t^{2} \alpha^{2}+\alpha^{2}-1\right)\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

This line will meet the line $R_{1}$ at

$$
\begin{aligned}
x_{1}=[ & -2 \alpha^{4} t^{6}+\left(\alpha^{5}+3 \alpha^{4}-3 \alpha^{2}-\alpha\right) t^{4} \\
& +\left(2 \alpha^{3}-\alpha^{4}+4 \alpha^{2}+2 \alpha-1\right) t^{2}+\left(1-\alpha^{2}\right) \\
& : t \alpha\left(\alpha^{2}+1\right)\left(t^{4} \alpha^{2}+1\right) \\
& : \alpha\left(-\alpha^{3}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right) t^{6}+\alpha\left(2 \alpha-4 \alpha^{2}+2 \alpha^{3}+\alpha^{4}+1\right) t^{4}\right. \\
& \left.\left.-\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(-3 \alpha+\alpha^{2}+1\right) t^{2}+2 \alpha\right)\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

and the line $R_{2}$ at

$$
\begin{aligned}
x_{2}=[ & \left(2 \alpha^{4}\right) t^{6}+\left(\alpha^{5}-3 \alpha^{4}+3 \alpha^{2}-\alpha\right) t^{4} \\
& +\left(\alpha^{4}+2 \alpha^{3}-4 \alpha^{2}+2 \alpha+1\right) t^{2}+\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right) \\
& : t \alpha\left(\alpha^{2}+1\right)\left(t^{4} \alpha^{2}+1\right) \\
& : \alpha\left(\alpha^{3}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right) t^{6}+\left(2 \alpha^{4}-\alpha^{5}+4 \alpha^{3}+2 \alpha^{2}-\alpha\right) t^{4}\right. \\
& \left.\left.+\left(3 \alpha-3 \alpha^{3}-\alpha^{4}+1\right) t^{2}-2 \alpha\right)\right] .
\end{aligned}
$$

The perpendicular line to $R_{1}$ through $x_{1}$ is $X_{1}=x_{1} r_{1}$ and the perpendicular line to $R_{2}$ through $x_{2}$ is $X_{2}=x_{2} r_{2}$ which meet at

$$
\begin{aligned}
& c_{0}=X_{1} X_{2}= \\
& {\left[\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(2 \alpha^{4} t^{6}+3 \alpha^{2}\left(1-\alpha^{2}\right) t^{4}-6 \alpha^{2} t^{2}+\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)\right)\right.} \\
& \quad:-2 t^{3} \alpha^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}+1\right)^{2} \\
& \left.\quad: \alpha^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(\alpha^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right) t^{6}+6 \alpha^{2} t^{4}+3\left(1-\alpha^{2}\right) t^{2}-2\right)\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

To evaluate the center of curvature, we note that adjacent normals, say at $p(t)$ and $p(r)$, meet at

$$
\begin{aligned}
& f(t, r)= \\
& {\left[( \alpha ^ { 2 } - 1 ) \left(-2 r^{3} t^{3} \alpha^{4}+r^{3} t \alpha^{4}-r^{3} t \alpha^{2}+r^{2} t^{2} \alpha^{4}-r^{2} t^{2} \alpha^{2}\right.\right.} \\
& \left.\quad+2 r^{2} \alpha^{2}+r t^{3} \alpha^{4}-r t^{3} \alpha^{2}+2 r t \alpha^{2}+2 t^{2} \alpha^{2}-\alpha^{2}+1\right) \\
& \quad: r t \alpha^{2}(r+t)\left(\alpha^{2}+1\right)^{2} \\
& \quad:-\alpha^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(r^{3} t^{3} \alpha^{4}-r^{3} t^{3} \alpha^{2}+2 r^{3} t \alpha^{2}+2 r^{2} t^{2} \alpha^{2}\right. \\
& \left.\left.\quad-r^{2} \alpha^{2}+r^{2}+2 r t^{3} \alpha^{2}-r t \alpha^{2}+r t-t^{2} \alpha^{2}+t^{2}-2\right)\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

where we have removed a common factor of $r-t$. Now let $r=t$ to find that $f(t, t)=c_{0}$.

### 5.6 Formula for the evolute

Can we get a formula for the evolute? Working with affine coordinates (setting $z=1$ ), we need eliminate $t$ from the equations

$$
\begin{aligned}
& x=\frac{\left(2 t^{6} \alpha^{4}-3 t^{4} \alpha^{4}+3 t^{4} \alpha^{2}-6 t^{2} \alpha^{2}+\alpha^{2}-1\right)}{\alpha^{2}\left(t^{6} \alpha^{4}-t^{6} \alpha^{2}+6 t^{4} \alpha^{2}-3 t^{2} \alpha^{2}+3 t^{2}-2\right)} \\
& y=\frac{-2 t^{3}\left(\alpha^{2}+1\right)^{2}}{\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(t^{6} \alpha^{4}-t^{6} \alpha^{2}+6 t^{4} \alpha^{2}-3 t^{2} \alpha^{2}+3 t^{2}-2\right)} .
\end{aligned}
$$



Figure 33: Normals to a parabola
We could use a Gröbner basis to calculate this, but the polynomials are small enough to do it by hand with classical elimination. We get, after some calculation, that $x$ and $y$ satisfy the affine equation

$$
\begin{aligned}
0 & =h(x, y)=32 \alpha^{8}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)^{3} x^{6}-256 \alpha^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)^{6} y^{6} \\
& +3 \alpha^{4}\left(8 \alpha+6 \alpha^{2}-8 \alpha^{3}+3 \alpha^{4}+3\right)\left(-8 \alpha+6 \alpha^{2}+8 \alpha^{3}+3 \alpha^{4}+3\right) \\
& +(\alpha-1)^{2}(\alpha+1)^{2} x^{4} y^{2} \\
& +384 \alpha^{4}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)^{5} x^{2} y^{4}+48 \alpha^{6}\left(-2 \alpha+\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(2 \alpha+\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)^{2} x^{5} \\
& -192 \alpha^{4}\left(-2 \alpha+\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(2 \alpha+\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)^{3} x^{3} y^{2} \\
& +192 \alpha^{2}\left(-2 \alpha+\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(2 \alpha+\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)^{4} x y^{4} \\
& +24 \alpha^{4}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(-2 \alpha-6 \alpha^{2}+2 \alpha^{3}+\alpha^{4}+1\right)\left(2 \alpha-6 \alpha^{2}-2 \alpha^{3}+\alpha^{4}+1\right) x^{4} \\
& -384 \alpha^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)^{5} y^{4} \\
& +6 \alpha^{2}\left(196 \alpha^{2}-378 \alpha^{4}+196 \alpha^{6}+\alpha^{8}+1\right)\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)^{2} x^{2} y^{2} \\
& +4 \alpha^{2}\left(2 \alpha+\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(-2 \alpha+\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(-36 \alpha^{2}+86 \alpha^{4}-36 \alpha^{6}+\alpha^{8}+1\right) x^{3} \\
& +192 \alpha^{2}\left(-2 \alpha+\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(2 \alpha+\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)^{3} x y^{2} \\
& -24 \alpha^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(2 \alpha-6 \alpha^{2}-2 \alpha^{3}+\alpha^{4}+1\right)\left(-2 \alpha-6 \alpha^{2}+2 \alpha^{3}+\alpha^{4}+1\right) x^{2} \\
& +3\left(-8 \alpha+6 \alpha^{2}+8 \alpha^{3}+3 \alpha^{4}+3\right)\left(8 \alpha+6 \alpha^{2}-8 \alpha^{3}+3 \alpha^{4}+3\right)\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)^{2} y^{2} \\
& +48 \alpha^{2}\left(-2 \alpha+\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(2 \alpha+\alpha^{2}-1\right)\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)^{2} x-32 \alpha^{2}\left(\alpha^{2}-1\right)^{3} .
\end{aligned}
$$

So the evolute is a six degree curve, with coefficients that depend in a pleasant way on $\alpha$. Note that all the coefficients are divisible by $\alpha^{2}-1$, with the exception of the coefficient of $x^{3}$.

## Acknowledgements

Ali Alkhaldi would like to thank the University of King Khalid in Saudi Arabia for financial support for his PhD studies at UNSW.
Both authors would like to thank the referee(s) for hepful suggestions.

## References

[1] A. V. Akopyan, A. A. Zaslavsky, NonEuclidean Geometry, 6th ed., Mathematical Association of America, Washington D. C., 1998.
[2] O. AvcioğLu, O. Bizim, The Hyperbolic Conics in the Hyperbolic Geometry, Advanced Studies in Contemporary Mathematics 16 (2008), 31-45.
[3] R. BAER, Linear Algebra and Projective Geometry, Academic press, New York, 1952.
[4] M. Berger, Geometry II, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1987.
[5] S. C.Choi, The Universal Parabola, Honours Thesis, School of Mathematics and Statistics, UNSW, 2011.
[6] H. S. M. Coxeter, Non-Euclidean Geometry, 6th ed., Mathematical Association of America, Washington D. C., 1998.
[7] G. Csima, J. Szirmai, Isoptic curves of the conic sections in the hyperbolic and elliptic plane, Studies of University in Žilina. Mathematical Physical Series 24(1) (2010), 15-22.
[8] T. DE Alwis, Normal Lines Drawn to a Parabola and Geometric Constructions, Proceedings of the Third Asian Technology Conference in Mathematics, University of Tsukuba, Japan, 1998.
[9] M. Henle, Will the Real Non-Euclidean Parabola Please Stand up?, Mathematics Magazine 71(5) (1998), 369-376.
[10] K. Kendig, Conics, The Math. Assoc. of America, 2005.
[11] E. MolnÁR, Kegelschnitte auf der metriscene Ebene, Acta Mathematica Academiae Scientiarum Hungaricae 21(3-4) (1978), 317-343.
[12] J. Richter-Gebert, Perspectives on Projective Geometry: A Guided Tour through Real and Complex Geometry, Springer, Heidelberg, 2010.
[13] G. Salmon, A treatise on conic sections, New York: Chelsea, 1960.
[14] J. H. Shackleton, Elementary analytical conics, 2nd ed., Oxford University Press, 1950.
[15] E. Story, On Non-Euclidean Properties of Conics, American Journal of Mathematics 5(1) (1882), 358381.
[16] N. J. Wildberger, Affine and projective metrical geometry, arXiv: math/0612499v1, (2006), to appear, Journal of Geometry.
[17] N. J. Wildberger, Universal Hyperbolic Geometry I: Trigonometry, Geometriae Dedicata 163(1) (2013), 215-274.
[18] N. J. Wildberger, Universal Hyperbolic Geometry II: A pictorial overview, $K o G 14$ (2010), 3-24.
[19] N. J. Wildberger, Universal Hyperbolic Geometry III: First steps in projective triangle geometry, KoG 15 (2011), 25-49.
[20] N. J. Wildberger, A. Alkhaldi, Universal Hyperbolic Geometry IV: Sydpoints and twin circumcircles, KoG 16 (2012), 43-62.

## Ali Alkhaldi

e-mail: aalkaldy@hotmail.com
Norman John Wildberger
e-mail: n.wildberger@unsw.edu.au
School of Mathematics and Statistics UNSW
Sydney 2052 Australia

## Conchoids on the Sphere

## Conchoids on the Sphere

## ABSTRACT

The construction of planar conchoids can be carried over to the Euclidean unit sphere. We study the case of conchoids of (spherical) lines and circles. Some elementary constructions of tangents and osculating circles are stil valid on the sphere. Further, we aim at the illustration and a precise description of the algebraic properties of the principal views of spherical conchoids, i.e., the conchoid's images under orthogonal projections onto their symmetry planes.
Key words: spherical curves, conchoids, algebraic curves, tangent, osculating circle, singularities, orthogonal projection

MSC2010: 51N20, 14H99, 70B99

## 1 Introduction

The construction of conchoids goes back to the early Greek mathematicians [5, 13]. Assume we are given a point $F$, called focus and a line $l$ called directrix one can ask for the set $c$ of all points in the Euclidean plane at fixed distance $d$ from $l$ measured on all lines through $F$, cf. Figure 1.

The set $c$ turns out to be an algebraic curve of degree 4, namely the conchoid of the line $l$ with respect to $F$ at distance $d \in \mathbb{R}$. The conchoid $c$ can be described by the equation

$$
\left(x^{2}-d^{2}\right)(f-x)^{2}+x^{2} y^{2}=0
$$

provided that a Cartesian coordinate system is chosen as depicted in Figure 1 with $F=(f, 0), f \in \mathbb{R}$ and $l: x=0$. The conchoid has two branches, one corresponding to the distance $+d$, while the other corresponds to the distance $-d$. The algebraic variety contains both branches.
The conchoid $c$ has an ordinary double point at $F=(f, 0)$ if $|d|>|f|$ (or an isolated double point if $|d|<|f|$ ). In the case of $|d|=|f|, F$ is a cusp of the first kind, i.e., with the local expansion $\left(u^{2}+o\left(u^{3}\right), u^{3}+o\left(u^{4}\right)\right)$, see [2,3]. The cusped curve can also be seen in Figure 2.

## Konhoide na sferi

## SAŽETAK

Konstrukcija ravninskih konhoida može se prenijeti na euklidsku jediničnu sferu. Promatramo slučaj konhoida generiranih sfernim pravacima i kružnicama. Neke elementarne konstrukcije tangenata i kružnica zakrivljenosti vrijede i za sferne konhoide. Nadalje, naš je cilj ilustracija i precizan opis algebarskih svojstava glavnih pogleda sfernih konhoida, tj. slika konhoida pri ortogonalnom projiciranju na njihove ravnine simetrije.

Ključne riječi: krivulje na sferi, konhoide, algebarske krivulje, tangenta, kružnica zakrivljenosti, singulariteti, ortogonalna projekcija


Figure 1: The construction of the conchoid $c$ of a line $l$ in the plane.


Figure 2: The planar conchoid of a line has an ordinary double point if $|d|>|f|$ (left), a cusp if $|d|=|f|$ (in the middle), and an isolated double point if $|d|<|f|$ (right).

Independent of the choice of $d$ and $f$ the curve $c$ considered as a curve in the projective plane (cf. Figure 3) has a tacnode at the ideal point of the $y$-axis. There, two linear branches with the same tangent emanate. Therefore, the conchoid is of genus 0 , and thus, it is a rational curve.


Figure 3: The singularities of the conchoid considered as a curve in the projective plane.
The name conchoid is due to the fact that its shape somehow reminds of a conch. The conchoid of a line (the directrix $l$ is a line) is frequently called conchoid of Nikomedes, see $[4,5,13]$. The line $l$ can be replaced by an arbitrary curve.
In former years, mathematicians developed elementary constructions of points, tangents, and osculating circles for some kinds of conchoids such as those of lines and circles. The kinematic point of view allows us to see the conchoids as traces of moving particles, and thus, further constructions of tangents and osculating circles can be deduced, see for example $[6,14]$.
In the last few years conchoids became popular in CAGD, see $[1,8,9,10,11]$. This is mainly due to the fact that under certain circumstances conchoids can be parametrized by means of rational functions which is mainly the content of $[8,9]$. Thus, a huge class of possibly new surfaces is available for CAGD. The conchoids of spheres and ruled surfaces are not spheres or ruled surfaces anymore, except in some special cases. In order to overcome this flaw, an intrinsic construction of conchoids for some geometries is presented in [7].
It is somehow surprising that conchoids on the sphere have not attracted the researchers' interest. Many constructions that are valid in the Euclidean plane can easily be adapted for the Euclidean unit sphere. In this article, we shall demonstrate this at hand of the spherical analoga to conchoids of lines and circles. The spherical conchoids of lines are conchoids of greatcircles on the sphere. However, the spherical conchoids of circles are stil conchoids of circles but on the sphere.
We shall describe spherical conchoids of lines and circles and study their algebraic properties at hand of their equations. Then, we discuss the shape of the principal views of the spherical conchoids. The principal views are obtained as orthogonal projections to a triple of mutually orthogonal planes where at least one of these planes is a plane of symmetry of the spherical curve. The resulting image curves are at most of degree 8 as is the case for the space curves.

For some image curves the degree reduces to 4 . Further, we describe the singularities showing up on the principal views of the spherical conchoids.

## 2 Conchoids of a line

Assume $\Sigma$ is the Euclidean unit sphere with the equation
$\Sigma: x^{2}+y^{2}+z^{2}=1$
and let further $l$ be a line on $\Sigma$, i.e., a greatcircle of $\Sigma$. Without loss of generality, we can asssume that $l$ is the equator of $\Sigma$ in the plane $z=0$ (see Figure 4). Thus, a parametrization of $l$ reads
$L(\lambda)=\left(c_{\lambda}, s_{\lambda}, 0\right) \quad$ with $\lambda \in[0,2 \pi[$
where we have used the abbreviations $c_{\lambda}:=\cos \lambda$ and $s_{\lambda}:=\sin \lambda$.
The focus $F$ of the conchoid shall be at spherical distance $\phi \in] 0, \pi / 2[$ from $l$. Therefore, its coordinates are
$F=\left(c_{\phi}, 0, s_{\phi}\right)$
(with $c_{\phi}:=\cos \phi$ and $s_{\phi}:=\sin \phi$ ) since it means no restriction to assume that the greatcircle orthogonal to $l$ through $F$ lies in the plane $y=0$.
The points on the spherical conchoid $c$ of $l$ with respect to $F$ at distance $\delta \in] 0, \frac{\pi}{2}[$ are found via the analogous construction on the sphere: Choose a point $L$ on the equator $l$, join it with $F$ by a greatcircle, and determine the points $P$ at spherical distance $\delta$ from $L$.


Figure 4: Construction of a conchoid on the unit sphere and the choice of a coordinate system.
We exclude the case $\phi=\frac{\pi}{2}$ which yields a pair of distance curves provided that $\delta \neq 0$. These distance curves are circles on $\Sigma$ with spherical radius $\frac{\pi}{2}-\delta$ in planes parallel to the equator plane. The choice $\delta=0$ shows that the equator can be seen as a trivial conchoid $c=l$. The case $\phi=\frac{\pi}{2}$ also yields circles as spherical conchoids of $l$.

Now we are going to derive an analytical description of the spherical conchoid. Assume that $(x, y, z)$ are the Cartesian coordinates of a point $X$ on the conchoid of $l$ at the spherical distance $\delta \in] 0, \frac{\pi}{2}[$ with respect to the point $F$. These coordinates satisfy Eq. (1). Since $[L, F]$ is a greatcircle of $\Sigma$, the points $F, L$, and the point $X$ on the conchoid are coplanar with the center $(0,0,0)$ of $\Sigma$. This is equivalent to
$s_{\lambda} s_{\phi} x-c_{\lambda} s_{\phi} y-s_{\lambda} c_{\phi} z=0$.
Further, we have $\overparen{\mathrm{LX}}=\delta$ which is measured along the greatcircle $[L, X]$. Thus, the canonical scalar product of the unit vectors $X=(x, y, z)$ and $L=\left(c_{\lambda}, s_{\lambda}, 0\right)$ yields the cosine of the angle subtained by $\overparen{L X}$, and therefore, we have
$c_{\lambda} x+s_{\lambda} y=\cos \delta$.
We can eliminate $\lambda$ from Eqs. (4) and (5): These equations are linear in $c_{\lambda}$ and $s_{\lambda}$, and thus, we can solve this system for $c_{\lambda}$ and $s_{\lambda}$ which gives

$$
\begin{aligned}
c_{\lambda} & =\frac{\cos \delta\left(s_{\phi} x-c_{\phi} z\right)}{s_{\phi}\left(x^{2}+y^{2}\right)-c_{\phi} x z} \\
s_{\lambda} & =\frac{\cos \delta s_{\phi} y}{s_{\phi}\left(x^{2}+y^{2}\right)-c_{\phi} x z}
\end{aligned}
$$

Since $c_{\lambda}{ }^{2}+s_{\lambda}{ }^{2}=1$ holds for any $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$, we arrive at an implicit equation of the spherical conchoids $c$ of a (spherical) line $l$ :

$$
c:\left\{\begin{align*}
\cos ^{2} \delta\left(\left(s_{\phi} x-c_{\phi} z\right)^{2}+s_{\phi}^{2} y^{2}\right) &  \tag{6}\\
-\left(s_{\phi}\left(x^{2}+y^{2}\right)-c_{\phi} x z\right)^{2} & =0, \\
x^{2}+y^{2}+z^{2} & =1 .
\end{align*}\right.
$$

Obviously, $c$ is a space curve of degree 8 , since it is the intersection of a quartic surface $\Phi$ (an example of which is displayed in Figure 5) with the unit sphere. Thus, we can say:


Figure 6: Three different appearances of spherical conchoids of a the equator: $\delta>\phi$ (left), $\delta=\phi$ (middle), $\delta<\phi$ (right).

### 2.1 Principal views of spherical conchoids

The orthogonal projections of $c$ onto the three planes $z=0$, $x=0$, and $y=0$ shall be called top view, front view, and (right) side view. We can state:

Theorem 2. The front and top view of a spherical conchoid given by Eq. (6) with $\delta \in] 0, \frac{\pi}{2}[$ are of algebraic degree 8 and of genus 1, i.e., they are elliptic. The right side view is a rational quartic.

Proof. The equations of $c$ 's principal views can be obtained from (6) by simply eliminating $z, x$, or $y$. Since $c$ is of degree 8 , the principal views of $c$ are at most of degree 8 . Reductions of the degree occur only in cases where the image plane is a plane of symmetry of each branch, i.e., each point of the image curve is the image of two points on $c$. Because of the special choice of the coordinate system, we see that $c$ is symmetric with respect to the plane $y=0$, and therefore, the side view is covered twice. Hence, it is of degree 4 . When computing the resultants of both equations in Eq. (6) with respect to $y$, we find the square of

$$
\begin{gathered}
q:\left(c_{\lambda} x+s_{\lambda} z\right)^{2} z^{2}-2 s_{\lambda} c_{\lambda} \sin ^{2} \delta x z \\
-\left(c_{2 \lambda} \cos ^{2} \delta+2 s_{\lambda}^{2}\right) z^{2}+s_{\lambda}^{2} \sin ^{2} \delta=0
\end{gathered}
$$

as the equation of the right side view of the spherical conchoid.
The computations can be carried out by Maple. The algcurves package allows us to compute the singularities and the genus of an algebraic curve. We summarize the results in tables: Besides the degree we give the singularities in terms of homogeneous coordinates (with the homogenizing factor always in the first position), the invariants [ $m, d, b$ ], where $m$ is the multiplicity, $d$ is the $\delta$-invariant, and $b$ is the branching number.
Note that for an ordinary $m$-fold point the equation $m=b$ holds. In any other case we have $m>d$. The genus $g$ of a planar algebraic curve $c$ of degree $n$ is the integer


Figure 7: Right side view of the spherical conchoid shows no singularity in the affine part. Note that the image of the focus is not singular.

$$
g=\frac{1}{2}(n-1)(n-2)-\sum_{S} d_{S}
$$

where $\mathcal{S}$ is the set of singular points on $c$ and $d_{S}$ are the $\delta$-invariants of all singularities on $c$. According to the Milnor-Jung formula, the $\delta$-invariant $d$ can be computed from the Milnor number $\mu$ and the branching number $b$ of a singularity as $d=\frac{1}{2}(\mu+b-1)$. Thus, an ordinary $k$-fold point has invariants $\left[k, \frac{1}{2} k(k-1), k\right]$, see $[2,3]$.

We have to distinguish between two cases whether $\phi \neq \delta$ or $\phi=\delta$.
(1) Let us first assume that $\phi \neq \delta$ :

The singularities of the right side view are given in Table 1. Since the genus equals zero, the curve showing up in the right side view is rational. Note that both singularities are ideal points of the $[x, z]$-plane. The point $(0: 1: 0)$ is an isolated tacnode, i.e., a point where a pair of complex conjugate linear branches touches a real tangent at the real point $(0: 1: 0)$. The remaining singularity is an ordinary double point. The right side view of the spherical conchoid is displayed in Figure 7.

| right side view |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | $\operatorname{deg}(\mathrm{c})=4$ |  |
| $S_{1}$ | $(0: 1: 0)$ | $[2,2,2]$ |
| $S_{2}$ | $(0: 1:-\cot \phi)$ | $[2,1,2]$ |
|  | genus $(\mathrm{c})=0$ |  |

Table 1: Singularities on the right side view.
In Figure 8 we can observe another phenomenon which may not only appear in connection with spherical conchoids. The algebraic image curve carries points that are outside the silhouette of the unit sphere. Thus, these points cannot be the images of points on the spherical curve. The points on these parts of the curve are called parasitic.


Figure 8: Singularities on the principal views of spherical conchoids of lines.

The front view shows a curve of degree eight (shown in Figure 9). It has a pair of complex conjugate ordinary double points $\left(0: \pm i: c_{\phi}\right)$ at the ideal line of the $[y, z]$-plane. Further, there is an ideal 4 -fold point with $\delta$-invariant $d=12$. Among the four singularities in the affine part of the curve (the part we can see in Figure 9) there are two tacnodes $(1: 0: \pm \sin \delta)$ which are the images of the top most points $T_{1}$ and $T_{2}$ of the conchoid on the front and back side of the sphere (cf. Figure 8). The fact that the two linear branches are in contact at the common image of the top most point is caused by the fact that the spherical conchoid has horizontal tangents at both points, $T_{1}$ and $T_{2}$. The image of the spherical focus $F$ (antipodal pair) completes the list of singular points, cf. Table 2.


Figure 9: The front view of the spherical conchoid shows up to four singularties.

| front view |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | $\operatorname{deg}(\mathrm{c})=8$ |  |
| $S_{1,2}$ | $\left(1: 0: \pm s_{\phi}\right)$ | $[2,1,2]$ |
| $T_{1,2}$ | $(1: 0: \pm \sin \delta)$ | $[2,2,2]$ |
| $S_{5}$ | $(0: 1: 0)$ | $[4,12,4]$ |
| $S_{6,7}$ | $\left(0: \pm i: c_{\phi}\right)$ | $[2,1,2]$ |
|  | genus $(\mathrm{c})=1$ |  |

Table 2: Singularities on the front view.
The top view has six real ordinary double points (see Figure 10). These are the image points $\left( \pm c_{\phi}, 0\right)$ of $F$ and its antipode. Further, there are four ordinary double points at $(0, w)$ where $w$ is a solution of the quartic equation

$$
t^{4} s_{\phi}^{2}+t^{2} \cos ^{2} \delta\left(c_{\phi}^{2}-s_{\phi}^{2}\right)-c_{\phi}^{2} \cos ^{2} \delta=0
$$

Two of these double points are real, two are complex conjugate. The ideal points $(0: 1: \pm i)$ of the $[x, y]$-plane are double points on the top view of the spherical conchoid. However, they are not ordinary double points, for their $\delta$ invariant equals four. At these points the curve hyperosculates itself. Further, we find tacnodes at $(1: \pm \cos \delta: 0)$ being the images of the front and back most points of the
conchoid on the upper and lower hemisphere, see Figures 8 and 10. The singularities of the spherical conchoid's top view are listed in Table 3.


Figure 10: The top view of the spherical conchoid shows up to six singular points.

| top view |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | $\operatorname{deg}(\mathrm{c})=8$ |  |
| $S_{1,2}$ | $(1: \pm \cos \delta: 0)$ | $[2,2,2]$ |
| $S_{3,4}$ | $\left(1: \pm c_{\phi}: 0\right)$ | $[2,1,2]$ |
| $S_{5,6,7,8}$ | $(1: 0: w)$ | $[2,1,2]$ |
| $S_{9,10}$ | $(0: 1: \pm i)$ | $[2,4,2]$ |
| $S_{11,12}$ | $\left(0: \pm s_{\phi}: 1\right)$ | $[2,1,2]$ |
|  | genus $(\mathrm{c})=1$ |  |

Table 3: Singularities on the top view.
(2) Finally, we deal with the case $\phi=\delta$, i.e., the curves with cusps.
We do not have to go through all the details. There are some minor changes in the types of some singularitiers showing up on the different views. Figure 11 shows the right side view, the front view, and the top view.

| right side view |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | ---: |
|  | $\operatorname{deg}(\mathrm{c})=4$ |  |
| $S_{1}$ | $(0: 1: 0)$ | $[2,2,2]$ |
|  | $\operatorname{genus}(\mathrm{c})=1$ |  |

Table 4: Singularities of the right side view of the curve with cusp.

The right side view of the spherical conchoid with cusp shows no singularity in the affine part. There is only one ideal point which is a tacnode, cf. Table 4. In this case the curve is of degree four, but nevertheless, it has genus 1 and is, therefore, elliptic since the only singularity has $\delta$-invariant $d=2$.


Figure 11: From left to right: the right side view, the front view, and the top view of the spherical conchoid with cusp. The front and top view show triple points that are composed of cusps and linear branches.

| front view |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | $\operatorname{deg}(\mathrm{c})=8$ |  |
| $S_{1,2}$ | $(1: \pm \sin \delta: 0)$ | $[3,3,2]$ |
| $S_{3}$ | $(0: 1: 0)$ | $[4,12,4]$ |
| $S_{4,5}$ | $(0: \pm i: \cos \delta)$ | $[2,1,2]$ |
|  | genus(c) $)=1$ |  |

Table 5: Singularities of the front view of the curve with cusp.

The front view shows a pair of triple points. Here, the images of the top most points and the image of the focus $F$ coincide. These triple points have $\delta$-invariant $d=3$ and branching number $b=2$, cf. Table 5. Thus, these triple points are composed singularities, consisting of an ordinary cusp sitting on a linear branch. Further, there are two complex conjugate ideal singular points on the front view.

| top view |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | $\operatorname{deg}(\mathrm{c})=8$ |  |
| $S_{1,2}$ | $(1: \pm \cos \delta: 0)$ | $[3,3,2]$ |
| $S_{3,4}$ | $(0: 1: \pm i)$ | $[2,1,2]$ |
| $S_{5,6}$ | $(0: \pm i \sin \delta: 1)$ | $[2,1,2]$ |
| $S_{7,8,9,10}$ | $(1: 0: w)$ | $[2,1,2]$ |
|  | genus(c) $=1$ |  |

Table 6: Singularities of the top view of the curve with cusp.

Again, the top view shows more singularities then any other view. The two triple points (see Table 6) showing up are composed singularities of the same type as those in the front view. Furthermore, there are four ordinary double points (two real ones and a pair of complex conjugate) at ( $1: 0: w)$ where $w$ is a solution of the quartic equation

$$
t^{4} s_{\phi}^{2}-t^{2} \cos ^{2} \delta\left(2-\cos ^{2} \delta\right)-\cos ^{4} \delta=0
$$

According to the genus formula the front and top view are of genus 1, and thus, elliptic.

There is a special type of spherical conchoid if we choose $\delta=\frac{\pi}{2}$. In this case the conchoid construction assigns to each point $L \in l$ the absolute polar point, i.e., the orthogonal point. Hence, the two branches to $\delta=-\frac{\pi}{2}$ and to $\delta=\frac{\pi}{2}$ are identic since opposite points represent the same point. All the three principal views of orthogonal conchoids are curves of degree four. Figure 12 shows an axonometric view of some orthogonal conchoids together with the three principal views of them.


Figure 12: Above: Some orthogonal conchoids of the equator. Below: Right side view, front view, and top view of some orthogonal conchoids.

The curves in the right side view are two-fold hyperbolae in a pencil of the second kind with the images of the north and south pole as well as the ideal point of the $x$-axis for the base points.

### 2.2 Constructive approach

### 2.2.1 Planar and spherical tangents

The kinematic generation of conchoids allows us to construct tangents to conchoids in the plane, see for example [14]. The same holds true in the spherical case, cf. [6, 12].


Figure 13: The instantaneous pole $P$ of the motion of the line $[L, X]$ with respect to the fixed system is found as the intersection of two normals.

In Figure 13, the construction of the tangent to the planar conchoid $c$ at some point $X$ is shown. The kinematic generation of the curve shows the way: In order to find the instantaneous pole $P$ of the motion of the line $[L, F]$ we observe that $L$ is gliding on the line $l$, and thus, the pole of the motion of $[L, F]$ with respect to the fixed system $l$ is the ideal point of the lines orthogonal to $l$. Since $[L, F]$ is gliding through $F$ and rotating about $F$ at the same time the instantaneous pole $P$ is also contained in the line orthogonal to $[L, F]$ through $F$, see [14]. The construction also works at the double point since this is a singularity of the algebraic curve but not for the trace of $X$. The tangent $t$ of $c$ at $X$ is orthogonal to $[P, X]$.


Figure 14: The construction of the instantaneous pole $P$ and the tangent $t$ on the sphere.

Figure 14 illustrates the construction of the tangent $t$ to the spherical conchoid at some point $X$. Actually, the planar construction has to be translated into the spherical setting: We intersect the greatcircle orthogonal to the equator $l$ through the point $L$ with that greatcircle through $F$ that is orthogonal to the greatcircle joining $L$ and $F$ and obtain the instantaneous spherical pole $P$ (actually a pair of antipodal points). The spherical normal of the conchoid at $X$ is the great circle joining $X$ and $P$. Finally, the spherical tangent $t$ is the greatcircle orthogonal to the spherical normal through the point $X$.

### 2.2.2 Planar and spherical osculating circles

Figure 15 shows the construction of the osculating circle $o$ at a generic point $X$ on a planar conchoid $c$. We use Bobillier's construction (see [14]). For that purpose we have to find two pairs of assigned points of the quadratic transformation that maps a point $U$ to its center of curvature $U^{\star}$. The point $L$ is moving on a straight line $l$, and thus, the center of its path is the ideal point $L^{\star}$ of all lines orthogonal to $l$. Further, we observe that the line $[L, F]$ is rotating about $F$ while gliding through $F$. Thus, $F$ is the envelope of $[L, F]$ and $F=A^{\star}$ is the center of curvature for the trace of the ideal point $A=[L, F]^{\perp}$ of all lines orthogonal to $[L, F]$. The two pairs $\left(L, L^{\star}\right)$ and $\left(A, A^{\star}\right)$ uniquely define the quadratic curvature mapping.


Figure 15: Bobilier's construction simplifies in the case of the conchoid.
Now, we can apply Bobbilier's construction to any of the pairs $\left(L, L^{\star}\right)$ or $\left(A, A^{\star}\right)$ in order to complete $\left(X, X^{\star}\right)$ with the yet unknown point $X^{\star}$. Note that $[L, A] \cap\left[L^{\star}, A^{\star}\right]=$ : $Q_{A L}$ defines an auxiliary line $q_{A L}:=\left[Q_{A L}, P\right]$ with the property $\Varangle\left(q_{A L}, p\right)=\Varangle\left(q_{A X}, p\right)$ (after proper orientation), see [14], where $p$ is the pole tangent, i.e., the common tangent to the two polhodes at $P$.
In the case of the conchoid it is not necessary to construct the pole tangent $p$ since we only have to add an angle as shown in Figure 15. On the auxiliary line $q_{A X}$ we find the point $Q_{A X}:=[A, X] \cap q_{A X}$, and finally, $X^{\star}=$ $[X, P] \cap\left[A^{\star}, Q_{A X}\right]$.

In order to find the spherical osculating circle $o$ (as shown in Figure 16) we translate all the constructions done in the planar case to the sphere. We are allowed to do this since the quadratic curvature mapping can be lifted to the sphere. We consider the Euclidean unit sphere to be placed such that it touches the Euclidean plane (carrying the planar figure) at the instantaneous pole $P$. Then, we perform a gnomonic projection from the plane to the sphere. The center of the projection is the center of the sphere, and thus, the projectively extended Euclidean plane is mapped to the sphere model of projective geometry. The gnomonic projection is locally (around $P$ ) conformal, and therefore, the quadratic curvature mapping is lifted to that on the sphere.
Figure 16 shows the construction of the spherical center of curvature. At this point we shall remark that the spherical osculating circle $o$ is not a greatcircle on $\Sigma$, except in those cases where $X$ is a spherical point of inflection. The spherical radius of curvature equals the spherical distance of $X$ and ist center of curvature $X^{\star}$.


Figure 16: The spherical version of Bobillier's construction yields the spherical center of curvature $X^{\star}$ for an arbitrary point $X$ on the spherical conchoid.

## 3 Conchoids of a circle

The construction of a conchoid is independent of the choice of the directrix curve. If we replace the line $l$ by a circle, we obtain the conchoids of circles. The analytic as well as the constructive treatment of conchoids of circles does not differ that much from the affore mentioned types of conchoids. Since circles can also be found on a sphere, we can also find conchoids of circles on the sphere. We will not discuss the conchoids of a circle in the plane and on the sphere in all details. We shall just show that the equations of these special spherical curves can be derived in a similar way.

Conchoids of a circle in the Euclidean plane are of algebraic degree 6 . Surprsingly, their spherical counter parts are of algebraic degree 8 (or, equivalently, of spherical degree 4), although we would expect them to be of degree 12. Some spherical conchoids of a circle are displayed in Figure 17.

The computation of an equation of spherical conchoids slightly differs from that of spherical conchoids of (spherical) lines.
Again, we assume that the focus $F$ lies in $y=0$ at latitude $\phi \in\left[0, \frac{\pi}{2}[\right.$. It means no restriction to assume that $F$ is a point on the upper hemisphere. There is a change in the directrix $l$ which shall henceforth be the circle of latitiude $\beta \neq 0, \frac{\pi}{2}$. Thus, the directrix is given by
$L(\lambda)=\left(c_{\beta} c_{\lambda}, c_{\beta} s_{\lambda}, s_{\beta}\right)$ with $\lambda \in[0,2 \pi[$
(with $c_{\beta}:=\cos \beta$ and $s_{\beta}:=\sin \beta$ ). Here, we should remark that this restricts the class of spherical conchoids of a circle. In this case, there exists a greatcircle through $F$ in a plane parallel to the plane of $l$ which, in general, needs not be true. However, we deal with the simpler type.


Figure 17: Spherical conchoids of a circle show cusps, and two types of double points.


Figure 18: Spherical conchoids as intersections of a quartic and the unit sphere.

Let $X=(x, y, z)$ be the point on the conchoid of $l$ with respect to $F$ at spherical distance $\delta \in\left[0, \frac{\pi}{2}[\right.$. Note that $X$ is also a point on the unit sphere, and therefore, $x^{2}+y^{2}+z^{2}=$ 1 holds. The collinearity condition of $F, X$, and $L$ from Eq. (4) now changes to
$s_{\phi} s_{\lambda} x+\left(c_{\phi} t_{\beta}-c_{\lambda} s_{\phi}\right) y-c_{\phi} s_{\lambda} z=0$
with $t_{\beta}:=\tan \beta$. Between the point $l(t)$ on the directrix and the point $X$ on the conchoid we measure the spherical distance $\delta$ which is a value with sign. Consequently, Eq. (5) modifies to
$c_{\lambda} c_{\beta} x+s_{\lambda} c_{\beta} y+s_{\beta} z=\cos \delta$.
Like in the case of the spherical conchoids of lines, we solve the system of linear equations (8), (9) with respect to $c_{\lambda}$ and $s_{\lambda}$. Since $c_{\lambda}{ }^{2}+s_{\lambda}{ }^{2}=1$ for all $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$, we have the following two equations that have to be satisfied by the coordinates of a point on the spherical conchoid $c$ of a circle $l$ :

$$
c:\left\{\begin{align*}
&\left(2 c_{\phi}{ }^{2}-1\right) x^{2}-s_{\phi}^{2} y^{4}  \tag{10}\\
&+\left(c_{\phi}^{2}-2 s_{\phi}^{2} x^{2} x^{2} y^{2}\right. \\
&+2 c_{\phi} s_{\phi}\left(x^{2} z+y^{2}\right) x \\
&-4 c_{\phi} s_{\phi} s_{\beta} \cos \delta(y+x) y^{2} \\
&+2 s_{\beta} \cos \delta\left(2 c_{\phi}^{2}-1\right) x^{2} z \\
&-2 s_{\phi}^{2} s_{\beta} \cos \delta y^{2} z \\
&+\left(\left(\cos ^{2} \delta+s_{\beta}^{2}\right)\left(1-2 c_{\phi}^{2}\right)-c_{\phi}^{2}\right) x^{2} \\
&+\left(\cos ^{2} \delta\left(1+2 c_{\phi}^{2}\right)+s_{\phi}^{2} s_{\beta}^{2}\right) y^{2} \\
&-2 c_{\phi} s_{\phi}\left(\cos \delta^{2}+s_{\beta}^{2}\right) x z \\
&+2 c_{\phi} s_{\beta} \cos \delta\left(2 s_{\phi} x-c_{\phi} z\right) \\
& c_{\phi}^{2}\left(\cos ^{2} \delta+s_{\beta}^{2}\right)=0, \\
& x^{2}+y^{2}+z^{2}=1 .
\end{align*}\right.
$$

From that we can infer in analogy to Theorem 1:
Theorem 3. The spherical conchoids of a circle at latitude $\beta$ with respect to a point $F$ is an algebraic curve of degree 8 or of spherical degree 4. The coordinates of all points on the spherical conchoid fulfill Equation (10).

The spherical conchoid of a circle is the intersection of a quartic surface with the sphere $\Sigma$. Some examples of the quartic surface are displayed in Figure 18. Like in the case of spherical and planar conchoids of lines, the spherical conchoids of circles can have cusps, isolated, and ordinary double points, see Figure 17.
Equations of the principal views (right side view, front view, top view) can be easily derived by eliminating coordinates ( $y, x, z$ ) from the two equations given in Eq. (10). It is not necessary to go into all the details of the computations and discussions. They are similar to those in the previous section. Now, we can state (cf. Theorem 2):

Theorem 4. The front and top view of spherical conchoids of circle are algebraic curves of degree 8 and genus 1, i.e., they are elliptic. The right side view is an elliptic quartic.

## References

[1] A. Albano, M. Roggero: Conchoidal transform of two plane curves. Appl. Algebra Eng. Comm. Comp. 21/4 (2010), 309-328.
[2] J.L. Coolidge: A Treatise on Algebraic Plane Curves. Dover Publications, New York, 1959.
[3] E. KUNZ: Introduction to plane algebraic curves. Birkhäuser, Boston, 2000.
[4] J.D. LaWrence: A catalog of special plane curves. Dover Publications, New York, 1972.
[5] G. Loria: Ebene algebraische und transzendente Kurven. B.G. Teubner, Leipzig-Berlin, 1910.
[6] H.R. MÜLler: Spärische Kinematik. VEB Dt. Verlag der Wissenschaften, 1962.
[7] B. Odehnal, M. Hamann: Generalized conchoids. Submitted, 2012.
[8] M. Peternell, D. Gruber, J. Sendra: Conchoid surfaces of spheres. Comput. Aided Geom. Design 30 (2013), 35-44.
[9] M. Peternell, D. Gruber, J. Sendra: Conchoid surfaces of rational ruled surfaces. Comput. Aided Geom. Design 28 (2011), 427-435.
[10] J.R. Sendra, J. Sendra: An algebraic analysis of conchoids to algebraic curves. Appl. Algebra Eng. Comm. Comp. 19/5 (2008), 285-305.
[11] J. Sendra, J.R. Sendra: Rational parametrization of conchoids to algebraic curves. Appl. Algebra Eng. Comm. Comp. 21/4 (2010), 413-428.
[12] W. StröHER: Raumkinematik. Unpublished manuscript.
[13] H. Wieleitner: Spezielle ebene Kurven. G.J. Göschen'sche Verlagshandlung, Leipzig, 1908.
[14] W. Wunderlich: Ebene Kinematik. (Hochschultaschenbuch 447/447a) Bibliograph. Inst., Mannheim, 1970.

## Boris Odehnal

e-mail: boris.odehnal@uni-ak.ac.at
University of Applied Arts Vienna
Oskar-Kokoschka-Platz 2
A-1100 Vienna
Austria

# On the Isoptic Hypersurfaces in the n-Dimensional Euclidean Space 

## On the Isoptic Hypersurfaces in the <br> n-Dimensional Euclidean Space


#### Abstract

The theory of the isoptic curves is widely studied in the Euclidean plane $\mathbf{E}^{2}$ (see [1] and [13] and the references given there). The analogous question was investigated by the authors in the hyperbolic $\mathbf{H}^{2}$ and elliptic $\mathcal{E}^{2}$ planes (see [3], [4]), but in the higher dimensional spaces there is no result according to this topic. In this paper we give a natural extension of the notion of the isoptic curves to the $n$-dimensional Euclidean space $\mathbf{E}^{n}(n \geq 3)$ which are called isoptic hypersurfaces. We develope an algorithm to determine the isoptic hypersurface $\mathcal{H}_{\mathcal{D}}$ of an arbitrary $(n-1)$ dimensional compact parametric domain $\mathcal{D}$ lying in a hyperplane in the Euclidean $n$-space. We will determine the equation of the isoptic hypersurfaces of rectangles $\mathcal{D} \subset \mathbf{E}^{2}$ and visualize them with Wolfram Mathematica. Moreover, we will show some possible applications of the isoptic hypersurfaces.


Key words: isoptic curves, hypersurfaces, differential geometry, elliptic geometry
MSC2010: 53A05, 51N20, 68A05

## 1 Introduction

Definition 1 Let $X$ be one of the constant curvature plane geometries $\mathbf{E}^{2}, \mathbf{H}^{2}, \mathcal{E}^{2}$. The isoptic curve $\mathcal{C}^{\alpha}$ of an arbitrary given plane curve $C$ of $X$ is the locus of points $P$ where $C$ is seen under a given fixed angle $\alpha(0<\alpha<\pi)$.

An isoptic curve formed from the locus of two tangents meeting at right angle $\left(\alpha=\frac{\pi}{2}\right)$ are called orthoptic curve. The name isoptic curve was suggested by C. Taylor in his work [12] in 1884.
In the Euclidean plane $\mathbf{E}^{2}$ the easiest case if $\mathcal{C}$ is a line segment then the set of all points (locus) for which a line segment can be seen under angle $\alpha$ contains two arcs in both half-plane of the line segment, each are with central angle $2 \alpha$. In the special case $\alpha=\frac{\pi}{2}$, we get exactly the

## O izooptičkim hiperplohama u n-dimenzionalnom euklidskom prostoru <br> SAŽETAK

Teorija o izooptičkim krivuljama dosta se proučava u euklidskoj ravnini $\mathbf{E}^{2}$ (vidi [1] i [13] te u referencama koje se tamo mogu naći). Autori su proučavali analogno pitanje u hiperboličkoj $\mathbf{H}^{2}$ i eliptičkoj ravnini $\mathcal{E}^{2}$ (vidi [3], [4]), međutim u višedimenzionalnim prostorima nema rezultata vezanih za ovu temu.
U ovom članku dajemo prirodno proširenje pojma izooptičkih krivulja na n-dimenzionalni euklidski prostor $\mathbf{E}^{n}(n \geq 3)$ koje zovemo izooptičke hiperplohe. Razvijamo algoritam kojim određujemo izooptičke hiperplohe $\mathcal{H}_{D}$ proizvoljne $(n-1)$-dimenzionalne kompaktne parametarske domene $\mathcal{D}$ koja leži u hiperravnini u $n$ dimenzionalnom euklidskom prostoru.
Odredit ćemo jednadžbu izooptičkih hiperploha pravokutnika $\mathcal{D} \subset \mathbf{E}^{2}$ i vizualizirati ih koristeći program Wolfram Mathematica. Štoviše, pokazat ćemo neke moguće primjene izoptičkih hiperploha.
Ključne riječi: izooptičke krivulje, hiperplohe, diferencijalna geometrija, eliptička geometrija
so-called Thales circle (without the endpoints of the given segment) with center the middle of the line segment.
Further curves appearing as isoptic curves are well studied in the Euclidean plane geometry $\mathbf{E}^{2}$, see e.g. [8],[13]. In [1] and [2] can be seen the isoptic curves of the closed, strictly convex curves, using their support function. The papers [14] and [15] deal with curves having a circle or an ellipse for an isoptic curve. Isoptic curves of conic sections have been studied in [6], [8] and [11]. A lot of papers concentrate on the properties of the isoptics e.g. [9], [7], [10] and the references given there.
In the hyperbolic and elliptic planes $\mathbf{H}^{2}$ and $\mathcal{E}^{2}$ the isoptic curves of segments and proper conic sections are determined by the authors ([3], [4], [5]).
In the higher dimensions by our best knowledge there are no results in this topic thus in this paper we give a natu-
ral extension of the Definition 1 in the $n$-dimensional Euclidean space $\mathbf{E}^{n}$. Moreover, we develope a procedure to determine the isoptic hypersurface $\mathcal{H}_{\mathcal{D}}$ of an arbitrary $(n-1)$ dimensional compact parametric domain $\mathcal{D}$ lying in a hyperplane in the Euclidean space. We will determine the equation of the isoptic hypersurfaces (see Theorem 1) of rectangles $\mathcal{D} \subset \mathbf{E}^{2}$ and visualize them with Wolfram Mathematica (see Fig. 2-3). Moreover, we will show some possible applications of the isoptic hypersurfaces.


Figure 1: Projection of a compact domain $\mathcal{D}$ to unit sphere in $\mathbf{E}^{3}$

## 2 Isoptic hypersurface of a compact domain lying in a hyperplane of $\mathbf{E}^{n}$

In Definition 1 we have considered that, the angle can be measured by the arc length on the unit circle around the point. From this statement, Definition 1 can be extended to the $n$-dimensional Euclidean space $\mathbf{E}^{n}$.

Definition 2 The isoptic hypersurface $\mathcal{H}_{\mathcal{D}}^{\alpha}$ in $\mathbf{E}^{n}(n \geq 3)$ of an arbitrary $d$ dimensional compact parametric domain $\mathcal{D}(2 \leq d \leq n)$ is the locus of points $P$ where the measure of the projection of $\mathcal{D}$ onto the unit $(n-1)$ sphere around $P$ is a given fixed value $\alpha(0<\alpha<$ $\left.\frac{\pi^{\frac{n-1}{2}}}{\Gamma\left(\frac{n-1}{2}\right)}\right)\left[\Gamma(t)=\int_{0}^{\infty} x^{t-1} e^{-x} d t\right]$ (see Fig. 1).
We consider a compact parametric $(n-1)(n \geq 3)$ dimensional domain $\mathcal{D}$ lying in a hyperplane of $\mathbf{E}^{n}$. We can suppose the next form of parametrization:
$\phi(x, y)$ plane surface
$\widetilde{\boldsymbol{\phi}}\left(u_{1}, u_{2}, \ldots, u_{n-1}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{c}\widetilde{f}_{1}\left(u_{1}, u_{2}, \ldots, u_{n-1}\right) \\ \widetilde{f}_{2}\left(u_{1}, u_{2}, \ldots, u_{n-1}\right) \\ \vdots \\ \widetilde{f}_{n-1}\left(u_{1}, u_{2}, \ldots, u_{n-1}\right) \\ 0\end{array}\right)$,

For the point $P\left(x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)=P(\mathbf{x})$ the inequality $x_{n}>0$ will be assumed. Projecting the surface onto the unit sphere with centre $P$, we have the following parametrization:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \boldsymbol{\phi}\left(u_{1}, u_{2}, \ldots, u_{n-1}\right)= \\
& \quad=\left(\begin{array}{c}
f_{1}\left(u_{1}, u_{2}, \ldots, u_{n-1}\right) \\
f_{2}\left(u_{1}, u_{2}, \ldots, u_{n-1}\right) \\
\vdots \\
f_{n}\left(u_{1}, u_{2}, \ldots, u_{n-1}\right)
\end{array}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{c}
f_{1}(\mathbf{u}) \\
f_{2}(\mathbf{u}) \\
\vdots \\
f_{n}(\mathbf{u})
\end{array}\right) . \tag{2.2}
\end{align*}
$$

Here, if $i \neq n$ we have

$$
f_{i}(\mathbf{u})=\frac{\tilde{f}_{i}\left(u_{1}, \ldots, u_{n-1}\right)-x_{1}}{\sqrt{\left(\tilde{f}_{1}\left(u_{1}, \ldots, u_{n-1}\right)-x_{1}\right)^{2}+\cdots+\left(\widetilde{f}_{n-1}\left(u_{1}, \ldots, u_{n-1}\right)-x_{n-1}\right)^{2}+\left(x_{n}\right)^{2}}},
$$

else $(i=n)$

$$
f_{n}(\mathbf{u})=\frac{-x_{n}}{\sqrt{\left(\widetilde{f}_{1}\left(u_{1}, \ldots, u_{n-1}\right)-x_{1}\right)^{2}+\cdots+\left(\widetilde{f}_{n-1}\left(u_{1}, \ldots, u_{n-1}\right)-x_{n-1}\right)^{2}+\left(x_{n}\right)^{2}}} .
$$

Now, it is well known, that the measure of the $n-1$-surface can be calculated using the forumla below:

$$
\begin{align*}
& S\left(x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)= \\
& \quad=\int_{a_{1}}^{b_{1}} \int_{a_{2}}^{b_{2}} \ldots \int_{a_{n-1}}^{b_{n-1}} \sqrt{\operatorname{det} G} \mathrm{~d} u_{n-1} \mathrm{~d} u_{n-2} \ldots \mathrm{~d} u_{1} \tag{2.3}
\end{align*}
$$

by successive integration, where

$$
\begin{aligned}
& G=J^{T} J= \\
& =\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
\frac{\partial f_{1}}{\partial u_{1}} & \frac{\partial f_{1}}{\partial u_{2}} & \cdots & \frac{\partial f_{1}}{\partial u_{n-1}} \\
\frac{\partial f_{2}}{\partial u_{1}} & \frac{\partial f_{1}}{\partial u_{2}} & \cdots & \frac{\partial f_{1}}{\partial u_{n-1}} \\
\vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\
\frac{\partial f_{n-1}}{\partial u_{1}} & \frac{\partial f_{n-1}}{\partial u_{2}} & \cdots & \frac{\partial f_{n-1}}{\partial u_{n-1}}
\end{array}\right)^{T} \\
& \\
& \\
& \\
& \\
& \left(\begin{array}{cccc}
\frac{\partial f_{1}}{\partial u_{1}} & \frac{\partial f_{1}}{\partial u_{2}} & \cdots & \frac{\partial f_{1}}{\partial u_{n-1}} \\
\frac{\partial f_{2}}{\partial u_{1}} & \frac{\partial f_{1}}{\partial u_{2}} & \cdots & \frac{\partial f_{1}}{\partial u_{n-1}} \\
\vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\
\frac{\partial f_{n-1}}{\partial u_{1}} & \frac{\partial f_{n-1}}{\partial u_{2}} & \cdots & \frac{\partial f_{n-1}}{\partial u_{n-1}}
\end{array}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

The isoptic hypersurface $\mathcal{H}_{\mathcal{D}}^{\alpha}$ by the Definition 2 is the following:
$\mathcal{H}_{\mathcal{D}}^{\alpha}=\left\{\mathbf{x} \in \mathbf{E}^{n} \mid \alpha=S\left(x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)\right\}$
In the general case, the isoptic hypersurface can be determined only by numerical computations. In the next section we show an explicite application of our algorithm.

## 3 Isoptic surface of the rectangle

Now, let suppose that $n=3$ and $\mathcal{D} \subset \mathbf{E}^{2}$ is a rectangle lying in the $[x, y]$ plane in a given Cartesian coordinate system. Moreover, we can assume, that it is centered, so the parametrization is the following:
$\widetilde{\boldsymbol{\phi}}(x, y)=\left(\begin{array}{l}x \\ y \\ 0\end{array}\right)$,
where $x \in[-a, a]$ and $y \in[-b, b](a, b \in \mathbf{R})$. And the parametrization of the projection from $P\left(x_{0}, y_{0}, z_{0}\right)$ can be seen below:
$\boldsymbol{\phi}(x, y)=\left(\begin{array}{c}\frac{x-x_{0}}{\sqrt{\left(x-x_{0}\right)^{2}+\left(y-y_{0}\right)^{2}+z_{0}^{2}}} \\ \frac{y-y_{0}}{\sqrt{\left(x-x_{0}\right)^{2}+\left(y-y_{0}\right)^{2}+z_{0}^{2}}} \\ \frac{-z_{0}}{\sqrt{\left(x-x_{0}\right)^{2}+\left(y-y_{0}\right)^{2}+z_{0}^{2}}}\end{array}\right)$.

Remark 1 It is clear, that the computations is similar if $\mathcal{D}$ is a normal domain concerning to $x$ or $y$ on the plane. The difference is appered only on the boundaries of the integrals.

Now, we need the partial derivatives, to calculate the surface area:
$\boldsymbol{\phi}_{x}(x, y)=\left(\begin{array}{l}\frac{\left(y-y_{0}\right)^{2}+z_{0}^{2}}{\left(\left(x-x_{0}\right)^{2}+\left(y-y_{0}\right)^{2}+z_{0}^{2}\right)^{3 / 2}} \\ \frac{-\left(x-x_{0}\right)\left(y-y_{0}\right)}{\left(\left(x-x_{0}\right)^{2}+\left(y-y_{0}\right)^{2}+z_{0}^{2}\right)^{3 / 2}} \\ \frac{z_{0}\left(x-x_{0}\right)}{\left(\left(x-x_{0}\right)^{2}+\left(y-y_{0}\right)^{2}+z_{0}^{2}\right)^{3 / 2}}\end{array}\right)$,
$\boldsymbol{\phi}_{y}(x, y)=\left(\begin{array}{c}\frac{-\left(x-x_{0}\right)\left(y-y_{0}\right)}{\left(\left(x-x_{0}\right)^{2}+\left(y-y_{0}\right)^{2}+z_{0}^{2}\right)^{3 / 2}} \\ \frac{\left(x-x_{0}\right)^{2}+z_{0}^{2}}{\left(\left(x-x_{0}\right)^{2}+\left(y-y_{0}\right)^{2}+z_{0}^{2}\right)^{3 / 2}} \\ \frac{z_{0}\left(y-y_{0}\right)}{\left(\left(x-x_{0}\right)^{2}+\left(y-y_{0}\right)^{2}+z_{0}^{2}\right)^{3 / 2}}\end{array}\right)$
/medskip
Taking the cross product of the vectors above, we obtain:

$$
\boldsymbol{\phi}_{x}(x, y) \times \boldsymbol{\phi}_{y}(x, y)=\left(\begin{array}{c}
\frac{z_{0}\left(x_{0}-x\right)}{\left(\left(x-x_{0}\right)^{2}+\left(y-y_{0}\right)^{2}+z_{0}^{2}\right)^{2}} \\
\frac{z_{0}\left(y_{0}-y\right)}{\left(\left(x-x_{0}\right)^{2}+\left(y-y_{0}\right)^{2}+z_{0}^{2}\right)^{2}} \\
\frac{z_{0}^{2}}{\left(\left(x-x_{0}\right)^{2}+\left(y-y_{0}\right)^{2}+z_{0}^{2}\right)^{2}}
\end{array}\right)
$$

Now we can substitute $\left|\boldsymbol{\phi}_{x}(x, y) \times \boldsymbol{\phi}_{y}(x, y)\right|$ into formula (2.3) to get the spatial angle:

$$
S\left(x_{0}, y_{0}, z_{0}\right)=
$$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{-a}^{+a} \int_{-b}^{+b} \frac{\left|z_{0}\right|}{\left(\left(x-x_{0}\right)^{2}+\left(y-y_{0}\right)^{2}+z_{0}^{2}\right)^{\frac{3}{2}}} \mathrm{~d} y \mathrm{~d} x= \tag{3.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

$\arctan \left(\frac{\left(a-x_{0}\right)\left(b-y_{0}\right)}{z_{0} \sqrt{\left(a-x_{0}\right)^{2}+\left(b-y_{0}\right)^{2}+z_{0}^{2}}}\right)+$ $\arctan \left(\frac{\left(a+x_{0}\right)\left(b-y_{0}\right)}{z_{0} \sqrt{\left(a+x_{0}\right)^{2}+\left(b-y_{0}\right)^{2}+z_{0}^{2}}}\right)+$ $\arctan \left(\frac{\left(a-x_{0}\right)\left(b+y_{0}\right)}{z_{0} \sqrt{\left(a-x_{0}\right)^{2}+\left(b+y_{0}\right)^{2}+z_{0}^{2}}}\right)+$
$\arctan \left(\frac{\left(a+x_{0}\right)\left(b+y_{0}\right)}{z_{0} \sqrt{\left(a+x_{0}\right)^{2}+\left(b+y_{0}\right)^{2}+z_{0}^{2}}}\right)$.

Remark 2 It is easy to see, if $a \rightarrow \infty$ and $b \rightarrow \infty$, then the angle tendst to $2 \pi$ for every $z_{0}$. This implies some kind of elliptic properties. The normalised cross pruduct of the two partial derivatives can be interpreted as a weight function on this elliptic plane. Now, if we have a domain on the plane, we can integrate this function over the domain, to obtain the angle. But the symbolic integral for a given domain almost never works, so in this case, it is suggested also, to use numerical approach.

Using the results abowe, we can claim the following theorem:

Theorem 1 Let us given a rectangle $\mathcal{D} \subset \mathbf{E}^{2}$ lying in the $[x, y]$ plane in a given Cartesian coordinate system. Moreover, we can assume, that it is centered at the origin with sides $(2 a, 2 b)$. Then the isoptic surface for a given spatial angle $\alpha(0<\alpha<2 \pi)$ is determined by the following equation:
$\alpha=\arctan \left(\frac{(a-x)(b-y)}{z \sqrt{(a-x)^{2}+(b-y)^{2}+z^{2}}}\right)+$
$\arctan \left(\frac{(a+x)(b-y)}{z \sqrt{(a-x)^{2}+(b-y)^{2}+z^{2}}}\right)+$
$\arctan \left(\frac{(a-x)(b+y)}{z \sqrt{(a-x)^{2}+(b-y)^{2}+z^{2}}}\right)+$
$\arctan \left(\frac{(a+x)(b+y)}{z \sqrt{(a-x)^{2}+(b-y)^{2}+z^{2}}}\right)$.

In the following figures, there can be seen the isoptic surface of the rectangle:


Figure 2: $2 a=9,2 b=13, \alpha=\frac{\pi}{2}$


Figure 3: $2 a=9,2 b=13, \alpha=\pi$


Figure 4: $2 a=7,2 b=11, \alpha=\frac{\pi}{6}$


Figure 5: $2 a=11,2 b=5, \alpha=\frac{\pi}{12}$


Figure 6: $2 a=7,2 b=13, \alpha=\frac{\pi}{2}$ (both half-spaces)


Figure 7: $2 a=7,2 b=13, \alpha=\frac{\pi}{4}$ (both half-spaces)

Remark 3 The figures show us, that this topic has severeal applications, for example designing stadiums, theaters or cinemas. It can be interesting, if we have a stadium, which has the property, that from every seat on the grandstand, the field can be seen under a same angle.
Designing a lecture hall, it is important, that the screen or the blackboard is clearly visible from every seat. In this case, the isoptic lecture hall is not feasible, but it can be optimized.


Figure 8: MetLife Stadium:
http://www.bonjovi.pl/forum/topics58/
25-27072013-east-rutherford-vt3278.htm

## References

[1] W. Cieślak, A. Miernowski, W. Mozgawa: Isoptics of a Closed Strictly Convex Curve, Lect. Notes in Math., 1481 (1991), pp. 28-35.
[2] W. Cieślak, A. Miernowski, W. Mozgawa: Isoptics of a Closed Strictly Convex Curve II, Rend. Semin. Mat. Univ. Padova 96, (1996), 37-49.
[3] G. Csima, J. Szirmai: Isoptic curves of the conic sections in the hyperbolic and elliptic plane, Stud. Univ. Žilina, Math. Ser. 24, No. 1, (2010), 15-22.
[4] G. Csima, J. Szirmai: Isoptic curves to parabolas in the hyperbolic plane, Pollac Periodica 7/1/1, (2012) 55-64.
[5] G. Csima, J. Szirmai: Isoptic curves of conic sections in constant curvature geometries, Submitted manuscript (2013).
[6] G. Holzmüller: Einführung in die Theorie der isogonalen Verwandtschaft, B.G. Teuber, LeipzigBerlin, 1882.
[7] R. Kunkli, I. Papp, M. Hoffmann: Isoptics of Bézier curves, Computer Aided Geometric Design, 30, (2013), 78-84.
[8] G. Loria: Spezielle algebraische und traszendente ebene Kurve, 1 \& 2, B.G. Teubner, Leipzig-Berlin, 1911.
[9] A. Miernowski, W. Mozgawa: On some geometric condition for convexity of isoptics, Rend. Semin. Mat., Torino 55, No. 2 (1997), 93-98.
[10] M. Michalska: A sufficient condition for the convexity of the area of an isoptic curve of an oval, Rend. Semin. Mat. Univ. Padova 110, (2003), 161-169.
[11] F. H. Siebeck: Über eine Gattung von Curven vierten Grades, welche mit den elliptischen Funktionen zusammenhängen, J. Reine Angew. Math. 57 (1860), 359370; 59 (1861), 173184.
[12] C. TAYLOR: Note on a theory of orthoptic and isoptic loci., Proc. R. Soc. London XXXVIII (1884).
[13] H. Wieleitener: Spezielle ebene Kurven. Sammlung Schubert LVI, Göschen'sche Verlagshandlung, Leipzig, 1908.
[14] W. Wunderlich: Kurven mit isoptischem Kreis, Aequat. math. 6 (1971). 71-81.
[15] W. Wunderlich: Kurven mit isoptischer Ellipse, Monatsh. Math. 75 (1971) 346-362.

## Géza Csima

e-mail: csgeza@math.bme.hu
Jenő Szirmai
email: szirmai@math.bme.hu

Department of Geometry
Institute of Mathematics
Budapest University of Technology and Economics
P.O. Box 91, H-1521 Budapest, Hungary

# Introduction to the Planimetry of the Quasi-Hyperbolic Plane 

Introduction to the Planimetry of the QuasiHyperbolic Plane


#### Abstract

The quasi-hyperbolic plane is one of nine projective-metric planes where the absolute figure is the ordered triple $\left\{j_{1}, j_{2}, F\right\}$, consisting of a pair of real lines $j_{1}$ and $j_{2}$ through the real point $F$. In this paper some basic geometric notions of the quasi-hyperbolic plane are introduced. Also the classification of qh-conics in the quasi-hyperbolic plane with respect to their position to the absolute figure is given. The notions concerning the qh-conic are introduced and some selected constructions for qh-conics are presented.


Key words: quasi-hyperbolic plane, perpendicular points, central line, qh-conics classification, osculating qh-circle
MSC2010: 51A05, 51M10, 51M15

## Uvod u planimetriju kvazi-hiperboličke ravnine <br> SAŽETAK

Kvazihiperbolička ravnina je jedna od devet projektivno metričkih ravnina kojoj je apsolutna figura uređena trojka $\left\{j_{1}, j_{2}, F\right\}$, gdje su $j_{1} \mathrm{i} j_{2}$ realni pravci koji se sijeku u realnoj točki $F$. U ovom članku uvodimo neke osnovne pojmove za kvazihiperboličku ravninu, te dajemo klasifikaciju konika u odnosu na njihov položaj prema apsolutnoj figuri. Nadalje, uvesti ćemo pojmove vezane uz konike u kvazihiperboličkoj ravnini i pokazati nekoliko izabranih konstrukcija vezanih uz konike.
Ključne riječi: kvazihiperbolička ravnina, okomite točke, centrala, klasifikacija qh-konika, oskulacijske qh-kružnice

## 1 Introduction

In the second half of the 19th century F. Klein opened a new field for geometers with his famous Erlangen program which is the study of the properties of a space which are in-
variant under a given group of transformations. Klein was influenced by some earlier research of A. Cayley, so today it is known that there exist nine geometries in plane with projective metric on a line and on a pencil of lines which are denoted as Cayley-Klein projective metrics. Hence, these plane geometries differ according to the type of the measure of distance between points and measure of angles which can be parabolic, hyperbolic, or elliptic. Furthermore, each of these geometries can be embedded in the real projective plane $\mathbb{P}_{2}(\mathbb{R})$ where an absolute figure is given as non-degenerated or degenerated conic [4], [5], [12] (for space and $n$-dimension see [11]).
In this article the geometry, denoted as quasi-hyperbolic, with hyperbolic measure of distance and parabolic measure of angle will be presented.

## 2 Basic notation in the quasi-hyperbolic plane

In the quasi-hyperbolic plane (further in text qh-plane) the metric is induced by a real degenerated conic i.e. a pair of real lines $j_{1}$ and $j_{2}$ incidental with the real point $F$. The lines $j_{1}$ and $j_{2}$ are called the absolute lines, while the point $F$ is called the absolute point. In the Cayley-Klein model of the qh-plane only the points, lines and segments inside of one projective angle between the absolute lines are observed. In this article all points and lines of the qh-plane embedded in the real projective plane $\mathbb{P}_{2}(\mathbb{R})$ are observed.

There are three different positions for the absolute triple $\left\{j_{1}, j_{2}, F\right\}$ : neither of the absolute elements are at infinity, only the absolute point is at infinity and the absolute point and one absolute line are at infinity (see Fig. 1). The first position of the absolute triple is used for constructions in this article.


Figure 1

For the points and the lines in the qh-plane the following terms are defined:

- isotropic lines - the lines incidental with the absolute point $F$,
- isotropic points - the points incidental with one of the absolute lines $j_{1}$ or $j_{2}$,
- parallel lines - two lines which intersect at an isotropic point,
- parallel points - two points incidental with an isotropic line,
- perpendicular lines - if at least one of two lines is an isotropic line,
- perpendicular points - two points ( $A$ and $B$ ) that lie on a pair of isotropic lines $(a$ and $b)$ that are in harmonic relation with the absolute lines $j_{1}$ and $j_{2}$.

Furthermore, an involution of pencil of lines $(F)$ having the absolute lines for double lines is called the absolute involution, denoted as $I_{Q H}$. This is a hyperbolic involution on the pencil $(F)$ where every pair of corresponding lines is in a harmonic relation with the double lines $j_{1}$ and $j_{2}$ ([1], p.244-245, [6], p.46). Notice that every pair of perpendicular points lie on a pair of $I_{Q H}$ corresponding lines. Hence, the perpendicularity of points in qh-plane is determined by the absolute involution, therefore $I_{Q H}$ is a circular involution in the qh-plane ([7], p.75).

Remark. Any two isotropic points on the same absolute line are perpendicular and parallel. Any two lines from a pencil $(F)$ are perpendicular and parallel.

## 3 Qh-conics classification

There are nine types of regular qh-conics classified according to their position with respect to the absolute figure:

- qh-hyperbola - a qh-conic which has a pair of real tangent lines from the absolute point,
- hyperbola of type $1\left(h_{1}\right)$ - intersects each absolute line in a pair of real and distinct points,
- hyperbola of type $2\left(h_{2}\right)$ - intersects one absolute line in a pair of real and distinct points and another absolute line in a pair of imaginary points,
- hyperbola of type $3\left(h_{3}\right)$ - intersects each absolute line in a pair of imaginary points,
- special hyperbola of type $1\left(h_{s 1}\right)$ - one absolute line is a tangent line and another absolute line intersects the qh-conic in a pair of real and distinct points,
- special hyperbola of type $2\left(h_{s 2}\right)$ - one absolute line is a tangent line and another absolute line intersects the qh-conic in a pair of imaginary points,
- qh-ellipse (e) - a qh-conic (imaginary or real) which has a pair of imaginary tangent lines from the absolute point,
- qh-parabola ( $p$ ) - a qh-conic passing through the absolute point i.e. both isotropic tangent lines coincide,
- special parabola $\left(p_{s}\right)$ - a qh-parabola whose isotropic tangent is an absolute line,
- qh-circle ( $k$ ) - a qh-conic for which the tangents from the absolute point are the absolute lines.

In the projective model of the qh-plane every type of a qhconic can be represented with the Euclidean circle without loss of generality (see Fig. 2). This fact simplifies the constructions in the qh-plane.


Figure 2

Furthermore every qh-conic $q$, except qh-parabolae, induces an involution $\phi_{q}$ on the pencil $(F)$ where the double lines are the isotropic tangents of the qh-conic $q$, and the corresponding lines of the involution $\phi_{q}$ are called conjugate lines. Notice that every qh-ellipse induces an elliptic involution, every qh-hyperbola induces a hyperbolic involution and every qh-circle induces an involution that coincides with the absolute involution $I_{Q H}$.

Remark. A qh-conic is called equiform if the isotropic tangent lines of the qh-conic are in harmonic relation with the absolute lines $j_{1}$ and $j_{2}$. In terms of the above mentioned involutions a qh-conic $q$ is equiform if the absolute involution $I_{Q H}$ is commutative with the involution $\phi_{q}$ induced by the qh-conic $q$. Notice that only qh-ellipses, qhhyperbolae of type 2 and qh-circles can be equiform [2], [3].

In the following some basic notions related to a qh-conic in the qh-plane are defined:

- The polar line of the absolute point $F$ with respect to a qh-conic is called the central line $c$ or the major diameter of the qh-conic (see Fig. 3). All qh-conics, except qhparabolas, have a non-isotropic central line. The central line of a qh-parabola is its isotropic tangent line, while for the special parabola it is an absolute line.


Figure 3

- The directrices of a qh-conic are (non-absolute) lines incident with the isotropic points of the qh-conic, i.e. lines incidental with the intersection points of the qh-conic with the absolute lines $j_{1}$ and $j_{2}$. A qh-conic can have none, one, two or four directrices $f_{i}, i \in\{1,2,3,4\}$ (see Fig. 4).


Figure 4

- The pole of the directrix with respect to a qh-conic is called a focus of the qh-conic. The number of foci $F_{i}, i \in\{1,2,3,4\}$, is equal to the number of directrices (see Fig. 4).
- The lines that are incident with the opposite foci are called isotropic diameters of a qh-conic (see Fig. 5). Especially for the qh-circles, which have one focus, the isotropic diameters are the lines of the pencil $(F)$. Hence a qh-conic can have none, one, two or infinitely many isotropic diameters $o_{i}, i \in\{1,2\}$.
- The qh-centers of a qh-conic are the points of intersection of the isotropic diameters and the central line of the qh-conic. A qh-conic can have none, one, two or infinitely many qh-centers $S_{i}, i \in\{1,2\}$ (see Fig. 5).
- The intersection points of a qh-conic with its isotropic diameters are called vertices of the qh-conic (see Fig. 5). A qh-conic can have four, two, one or none vertices $T_{i}, i \in$ $\{1,2,3,4\}$.


Figure 5

The absolute involution $I_{Q H}$ can be observed as a point range involution on any non-isotropic line, hence it can be observed on the central line of a qh-conic, except for qhparabolae. Also the involution $\phi_{q}$ on a pencil $(F)$ induced by a qh-conic $q$ can be observed as the involution $\varphi_{q}$ of a point range on the central line $c$ of the qh-conic $q$, and two corresponding points of involution $\varphi_{q}$ are called conjugate points. Therefore, the qh-centers for the qh-ellipses and qh-hyperbolae can be found as a pair of perpendicular
and conjugate points on the central line, and the isotropic diameters as the perpendicular and conjugate lines of the pencil $(F)$. The construction will be shown later. Notice that because the involution induced by a qh-circle coincides with the absolute involution all pairs of conjugate points on the central line of the qh-circle are perpendicular points. Hence any point on the central line is its center and every line of the pencil $(F)$ is its isotropic diameter.

Aforementioned qh-conics and notions can be summarized in the following table:

| Qh-Conic | Directrix | Focus | Isotropic diameter | Center | Vertex |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Ellipse <br> $e$ | 4 real | 4 real | 2 real | 2 real | 4 real |
| Hyperbola <br> $h_{1}$ | 4 real | 4 real | 2 real | 2 real | 2 real + <br> 2 imaginary |
| Hyperbola <br> $h_{2}$ | 4 imaginary | 4 imaginary | 2 imaginary | 2 imaginary | 4 imaginary |
| Hyperbola <br> $h_{3}$ | 4 imaginary | 4 imaginary | 2 real | 2 real | 2 real + <br> 2 imaginary |
| Parabola <br> $p$ | 2 real | 2 real | 1 real | 1 real | 2 real |
| Special <br> parabola <br> $p_{s}$ | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Special <br> hyperbola <br> $h_{s 1}$ | 2 real | 2 real | 1 real | 1 real | 1 real |
| Special <br> hyperbola <br> $h_{s 2}$ | 2 imaginary | 2 imaginary | 1 real | 1 real | 1 real |
| Circle <br> $c$ | 1 real | 1 real | infinite | infinite | 0 |

Table 1

For parabolae and special hyperbolae see figure 6.


Figure 6

Remark. The qh-plane is dual to the pseudo-Euclidean (Minkowski) plane where the metric is induced by a real line and two real points incident with it. Therefore the notions defined above can be explained as duals of the Minkowski plane.

The conics in pseudo-Euclidean plane (pe-plane) are classified in nine subtypes, hence the classification of qhconics was based on [3], [9], [10]. Furthermore, the aforementioned elements for qh-conics can be presented as follows:

- the central line is a dual of the center of a conic in the pe-plane,
- the directrices are a dual of the foci of a conic in the pe-plane,
- the foci are a dual of the directrices of a conic in the pe-plane,
- the qh-centers are dual to the axes of a conic in the peplane.
The dual of the isotropic diameters are the intersections of the axes with the absolute line, but they were not of special interest in the pe-plane. Also the dual of the vertices in qh-plane are the tangents to the conic in pe-plane from the above mentioned intersections. It should be emphasized that the dual of the vertices in pe-plane are tangents to the qh-plane from the qh-centers. Since the axes in pe-plane and qh-centers in qh-plane are dual, therefore it was not chosen in this article to observe the vertices of a qh-conic as a line.

Furthermore, the pairs of conjugate points on the central line of the involution $\varphi_{q}$ induced by a qh-conic $q$ in the qh-plane are dual to the pairs of lines on which lie the conjugate diameters of a conic in the pe-plane. Consequently, the aforementioned property of qh-centers for a qh-circle is dual to the fact that all pairs of conjugate diameters of a pseudo-Euclidean circle are perpendicular.

## 4 Some construction assignments

### 4.1 Qh-centers and isotropic diameters of the qhellipses and qh-hyperbolae

Let a qh-conic $q$ be given, that is not a qh-parabola. As already mentioned, a pair of conjugate and perpendicular points on the central line $c$ will be qh-centers of a qhconic. In order to construct these qh-centers for the given
qh-conic $q$ we observe the involution $\phi_{q}$ induced by the qhconic $q$ and the absolute involution $I_{Q H}$. These pencils will be supplemented by the same Steiner's conic $s$, which is an arbitrary chosen conic through $F$. Let a pair of isotropic lines $n$ and $n_{1}$ be the double lines of the involution $\phi_{q}$. The involutions $I_{Q H}$ and $\phi_{q}$ determine two involutions on the conic $s$. Let the points $O_{1}$ and $O_{2}$ be denoted as the centers of these involutions. The line $O_{1} O_{2}$ intersects the conic $s$ at two points $I_{1}$ and $I_{2}$. Isotropic lines ( $o_{1}=F I_{1}, o_{2}=F I_{2}$ ) through these points are a common pair of these two involutions. Hence, lines $o_{1}$ and $o_{2}$ are isotropic diameters for the given qh-conic $q$. The intersection points $S_{1}$ and $S_{2}$ of $o_{1}$ and $o_{2}$ with the central line $c$ are qh-centers of the given qh-conic. Figure 7 shows the described construction for hyperbola of type 3 .
The construction is based on the Steiner's construction ([6], p.26, [7], p.74-75).
Notice that for the hyperbola of type 2 the line $O_{1} O_{2}$ in the construction will not intersect the conic $s$, and therefore it has a pair of imaginary isotropic diameters. In general, two involutions on a same pencil (line) have a common pair of real corresponding lines (points) if at least one of them is an elliptic involution. If both of the involutions are hyperbolic then they have a common pair of real corresponding lines (points) if both double lines of one involution are between the double lines (points) of the other involution. In the other case the common pair is a pair of imaginary lines ([6], p.60).


Figure 7

### 4.2 Osculating qh-circle of a qh-conic

Generally, it is know that two arbitrary conics have four common tangents, therefore the same applies for a conic and a circle. Furthermore, if three of this common tangents coincide then the circle is called a osculating circle of the conic at the point which is the point of tangency of the triple tangent. Hence, there is an osculating circle at any point of a conic.

Let a qh-conic be given, and a tangent $t_{A}$ at an arbitrary point $A$ of the qh-conic. Figure 8 shows the construction of the qh-circle osculating a qh-conic at the point $A$ by using the elation $\left(C, t_{A}, D_{1}, D_{1}^{\prime}\right)$ [8]. Let points $J_{1}$ and $J_{2}$ be the isotropic points of the tangent $t_{A}$. The tangents $d_{1}$ and $d_{2}$ from the points $J_{1}$ and $J_{2}$, respectively, to the given qhconic intersect at the point $F^{\prime}$ which corresponds to the absolute point $F$. The ray $F^{\prime} F$ intersects the tangent $t_{A}$, which is the axis of the elation, at the center $C$ of the elation. Hence the tangent lines $j_{1}$ and $j_{2}$ (absolute lines) of the osculating qh-circle correspond to the tangent lines $d_{1}$ and $d_{2}$ of a given qh-conic. Let the points of tangency of a qh-circle and $j_{1}, j_{2}$ be denoted as $D_{1}$ and $D_{2}$, respectively. Let the point of tangency of a qh-conic and $d_{1}, d_{2}$ be denoted as $D_{1}^{\prime}$ and $D_{2}^{\prime}$. Therefore $D_{1}^{\prime}, D_{1}$ and $D_{2}^{\prime}, D_{2}$ are the pairs of corresponding points of the elation. Similar construction principle is given in [13].


Figure 8
Remark. It should be emphasized that in a qh-plane it is possible to construct infinitely many osculating qh-circles at the isotropic tangency point if the given qh-conic is a qh-circle. The qh-circle osculating the given qh-circle $k$ at its isotropic point $J_{i},(i=1,2)$ can be constructed by using the elation $\left(F, j_{i}, A, A^{\prime}\right),(i=1,2)$. The point $F$ is the center of the elation, the absolute line $j_{i}$ its axis, $A$ an arbitrary chosen point on qh-circle and $A^{\prime}$ an arbitrary chosen point on the ray $A F$ (see Fig. 9).


Figure 9

### 4.3 Hyperosculating qh-circle of qh-conics

A hyperosculating circle of a conic has a common quadruple tangent with the conic, hence it can be constructed only at the vertices of a conic. The similar construction principle as for the osculating circle can be performed to construct the hyperosculating qh-circle at the vertex of a qhconic.
Let the hyperbola $h_{1}$ be given. The intersection points $T_{1}$ and $T_{2}$ of the qh-conic $h_{1}$ with its isotropic diameter are the vertices of the hyperbola. The hyperosculating qh-circle at the vertex $T_{2}$ is completely determined with the elation $\left(T_{2}, t_{2}, D_{i}, D_{i}^{\prime}\right)(i=1,2)$ where $T_{2}$ is the center and tangent $t_{2}$ at $T_{2}$ its axis. The tangent lines $j_{1}$ and $j_{2}$ of the hyperosculating qh-circle correspond to the tangent lines $d_{1}$ and $d_{2}$ of the $h_{1}$. Let the point of tangency of a qh-conic $h_{1}$ and $d_{1}, d_{2}$ be denoted as $D_{1}^{\prime}$ and $D_{2}^{\prime}$, respectively. Let the points of tangency of a qh-circle and $j_{1}, j_{2}$ be denoted as $D_{1}$ and $D_{2}$, respectively. $D_{1}^{\prime}, D_{1}$ and $D_{2}^{\prime}, D_{2}$ are the pairs of corresponding points of the elation (see Fig. 10).


Figure 10

## References

[1] H. S. M. Coxeter, Introduction to geometry, John Wiley \& Sons, Inc, Toronto 1969;
[2] N. Kovačević, E. Jurkin, Circular Cubics and Quartics in pseudo-Euclidean plane obtained by inversion, Mathematica Pannonica 22/1 (2011), 1-20;
[3] N. Kovačević, V. Szirovicza, Inversion in Minkowskischer geomertie, Mathematica Pannonica 21/1 (2010), 89-113;
[4] N. M. Makarova, On the projective metrics in plane, Učenye zap. Mos. Gos. Ped. in-ta, 243 (1965), 274-290. (Russian);
[5] M. D. Milojević, Certain Comparative examinations of plane geometries according to Cayley-Klein, Novi Sad J. Math., Vol. 29, No. 3, 1999, 159-167
[6] V. NičE, Uvod u sintetičku geometriju, Školska knjiga, Zagreb, 1956.;
[7] D. Palman, Projektivne konstrukcije, Element, Zagreb, 2005;
[8] A. SLIEPČEVIĆ, I. BožIĆ, Classification of perspective collineations and application to a conic, $K o G 15$, 2011, 63-66;
[9] A. SliepčEvić, M. Katić Žlepalo, Pedal curves of conics in pseudo-Euclidean plane, Mathematica Pannonica 23/1 (2012), 75-84;
[10] A. Sliepčević, N. Kovačević, Hyperosculating circles of Conics in the Pseudo-Eucliden plane, Manuscript;
[11] D. M. Y Sommerville, Classification of geometries with projective metric, Proc. Ediburgh Math. Soc. 28 (1910), 25-41;
[12] I. M. Yaglom, B. A. Rozenfeld, E. U. YasinSKAYA, Projective metrics, Russ. Math Surreys, Vol. 19, No. 5, 1964, 51-113;
[13] G. Weiss, A. SliepčEvić, Osculating Circles of Conics in Cayley-Klein Planes, $K o G 13,2009,7-13$;

## Ivana Božić

e-mail: ivana.bozic@tvz.hr
Polytechnic of Zagreb,
10000 Zagreb, Avenija V. Holjevca 15, Croatia

## Helena Halas

email: hhalas@grad.hr
Ana Sliepčević
email: anas@grad.hr
Faculty of Civil Engineering, University of Zagreb, 10000 Zagreb, Kačićeva 26, Croatia

# Izometrije u Escherovim radovima 

## Isometries in Escher's Work

## ABSTRACT

For better understanding of M. C. Escher's tesselation graphics we provide an overview of planar isometries and classification of plane symmetry groups. Some of the plane symmetry groups are explained on prominent Escher's graphics.

Key words: Escher, isometries, tessellation, plane symmetry groups

MSC2010: 00A66, 05B45, 20H15, 51F15, 52C20

## 1 Uvod

Simetrija kao aspekt umjetnosti cijeni se i interpretira već stoljećima. Neki od ranijih umjetničkih radova koji su integrirali simetriju datiraju još iz doba antičkih kultura. Euklid se bavio simetrijom u desetoj knjizi svojih Elemenata, gdje definira kada su neke dvije figure simetrične. Nizozemski umjetnik-grafičar Maurits Cornelis Escher (1898.-1972.) ima zadivljujući umjetnički opus te je omiljen među matematičarima. Njegova osnovna inspiracija potiče od arabesknih ukrasa srednjovjekovne palače Alhambre u Španjolskoj. Impresivni opus obuhvaća, između ostalog, i 43 grafike koje Escher jednostavno naziva (npr. Escher drawing no. 8). Ta djela nastala su u razdoblju 1936.-1942. nakon čega je Escherova popularnost poprimila svjetske razmjere. Escherove grafike su predmet znanstvenih i stručnih radova matematičara, informatičara, grafičara, a kao vrsta popločavanja ravnine zanimljive su i u kristalografiji ([2]). U ovom radu, koji je nastao na osnovu studentskog seminara, otkrit ćemo tehniku kreiranja nekih njegovih grafika pomoću izometrija u euklidskoj ravnini. Na osnovu klasifikacije ravninskih grupa simetrija prepoznat ćemo grupe simetrija na primjerima. Neke Escherove grafike mogu se promatrati i u neeuklidskoj ravnini ([6]).

## Izometrije u Escherovim radovima <br> SAŽETAK

U ovom članku dan je pregled izometrija ravnine i klasifikacija ravninskih grupa simetrija kao matematička podloga za razumijevanje "trikova" kojima se M. C. Escher služio prilikom stvaranja velikog broja svojih grafika. Razmatrat ćemo grupe simetrija na primjerima nekih od najpoznatijih Escherovih grafika.

Ključne riječi: Escher, izometrije, popločavanje, ravninske grupe simetrija

## 2 Definicije i svojstva izometrija

Na početku navodimo osnovne definicije i svojstva izometrija u euklidskoj ravnini $E^{2}$ ([3], [4], [5]).

Definicija 1 Izometrija euklidske ravnine je svaka bijekcija $f: E^{2} \rightarrow E^{2}$ ravnine na sebe koja čuva udaljenost točaka, $t j$. takva da je $d(f(A), f(B))=d(A, B)$ za sve točke A iBizE $E^{2}$.

Svojstva izometrija u odnosu na kompoziciju funkcija:

## Teorem 1

(i) Kompozicija izometrija $f i g, f \circ g$, je takoder izometrija.
(ii) Neka je $f$ izometrija. Tada je njezin inverz $f^{-1}$ tako der izometrija.

Definicija 2 Kažemo da je izometrija involutorna ako je $f \circ f=i d i f \neq i d$.

Involutorna izometrija je sama sebi inverz.
Definicija 3 Figura je svaki podskup od $E^{2}$.
Za figuru $F$ iz Euklidske ravnine $E^{2}$ kažemo da je fiksna figura izometrije $f$ ako je $f$ preslikava u nju samu, tj. ako je $f(F)=F$.

Svojstva izometrija u odnosu na fiksnu figuru:

## Teorem 2 Neka je f izometrija.

(i) Sjecište, ako postoji, dvaju različitih fiksnih pravaca od $f$ je fiksna točka od $f$.
(ii) Spojnica dvaju fiksnih točaka od $f$ je fiksni pravac od $f$.
(iii) Ako je $f$ involutorna izometrija, onda kroz točku koja nije fiksna za f prolazi točno jedan fiksni pravac $z a f$.

Definicija 4 Involutorna izometrija kojoj su sve točke pravca a fiksne zove se osna simetrija s obzirom na pravac a, u oznaci $s_{a}$.

Escher je u svojim grafikama koristio izometrije: osnu simetriju, translaciju, rotaciju i centralnu simetriju. Svojstvo tih izometrija je da se mogu definirati pomoću osne simetrije.


Slika 1: Primjer simetrija na Escherovoj grafici (Angel and devil)

Definicija 5 Izometriju koja se može prikazati kao kompozicija $s_{a} \circ s_{b}$ dviju osnih simetrija $s_{a} i s_{b}$ zovemo translacija ako su osi simetrije a i b paralelni pravci.

Definicija 6 Izometriju koja se može prikazati kao kompozicija $s_{a} \circ s_{b}$ dviju osnih simetrija $s_{a}$ i $s_{b}$ zovemo rotacija ako osi simetrije a i b nisu paralelni pravci.

Definicija 7 Centralna simetrija je rotacija $s_{a} \circ s_{b} z a$ koju su osi simetrije a i b okomiti pravci.

Definicija 8 Izometrija koja se može prikazati u obliku kompozicije $s_{g} \circ s_{b} \circ s_{a}$, gdje je pravac $g$ okomit na pravce a i b zove se klizna simetrija.

Klizna simetrija je najzastupljenija u Escherovim grafikama.
Sljedeći teorem daje karakterizaciju nekih izometrija:

## Teorem 3

(i) Svaka involutorna izometrija je ili osna ili centralna simetrija.
(ii) Kompozicija dviju rotacija je ili rotacija ili translacija.
(iii) Izometrija je klizna simetrija ako i samo ako se može predočiti u obliku kompozicije jedne osne i jedne centralne simetrije ili jedne centralne $i$ jedne osne simetrije.
(iv) Svaka izometrija je ili translacija ili rotacija ili klizna simetrija.


Slika 2: Primjer translacije na Escherovoj grafici


Slika 3: Primjer rotacije na Escherovoj grafici


Slika 4: Primjer klizne simetrije na Escherovoj grafici

## 3 Grupe simetrija

Neka je $I z\left(E^{2}\right)$ skup svih izometrija Euklidske ravnine $E^{2}$. Poznato je da je $I z\left(E^{2}\right)$ zajedno s komponiranjem funkcija kao binarnom operacijom grupa izometrija, u oz$\operatorname{naci}\left(I z\left(E^{2}\right), \circ\right)$.

Teorem 4 Neka je $I z(F)=\left\{f \in \operatorname{Iz}\left(E^{2}\right): f(F)=F\right\}$, gdje je F figura Euklidske ravnine $E^{2}$. Tada je (Iz(F), ○) je grupa simetrija figure F.

Kako bi u Escherovim grafikama prepoznali izometrije definiramo popločavanje.

Definicija 9 Popločavanje je razdioba (particija) ravnine na disjunktne skupove $H_{i}, i \in \mathbb{N}$ čija unija daje cijelu ravninu.

- Uzorak u ravnini je figura, koja je u Escherovim grafikama oblika životinje. Uzorak preslikavamo u samog sebe i pomoću izometrija ravnine: rotacija, simetrija, kliznih simetrija, translacija.
- Osnovni uzorak je dio uzorka sa svojstvom da skup uzoraka u grupi izometrija prekriva ravninu. Drugim riječima, osnovnim uzorkom popločavamo ravninu.
- Generirajuće područje je dio osnovnog uzorka čije slike u grupi simetrija uzorka popločavaju ravninu.

Na slici 5 prikazan je uzorak konja, osnovni uzorak (crveni paralelogram) i generirajuće područje (žuti trokut).


Slika 5: Primjer generirajućeg područja

Sljedeći teorem daje klasifikaciju ravninskih grupa simetrija ([1], [8]). Dokaz je izostavljen i može se naći u [9].

## Teorem 5 (Barlow, Fedorov, Schönflies-1891.)

Postoji samo 17 mogućih ravninskih grupa simetrija.

Tih sedamnaest grupa poznate su i kao ravninske grupe kristalografije. Pomoću njih, kristalografi sistematiziraju kristale ([2]). Ravninske grupe simetrija odgovaraju sedamnaest načina popločavanja ravnine. U Escherovim grafikama se mogu razmatrati vrlo vješta i zanimljiva popločavanja.

Napomena 1 Broj n označava stupanj rotacije. Rotacija za kut $\frac{360^{\circ}}{n}$ ima stupanj rotacije $n$.

| Naziv | Osnovni uzorak | Stupanj <br> rotacije | Klizna <br> simetrija | Generirajuće <br> područje uzorka | Značajke |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| p 1 | paralelogram | 1 | $/$ | cijela površina | translacija |
| p 2 | paralelogram | 2 | $/$ | $1 / 2$ površine | 4 rotacije za $180^{\circ}$ |
| pm | četverokut | 1 | $/$ | $1 / 2$ | 2 osne simetrije |
| pmm | četverokut | 2 | $/$ | $1 / 4$ | 2 osne simetrije |
| pg | četverokut | 1 | da | $1 / 2$ |  |
| pgg | četverokut | 2 | da | $1 / 4$ |  |
| pmg | četverokut | 2 | da | $1 / 4$ | osi simetrije su paralelne |
| cm | romb | 1 | da | $1 / 2$ |  |
| cmm | romb | 2 | da | $1 / 4$ | osi simetrije su okomite |
| p 4 | kvadrat | 4 | $/$ | $1 / 4$ |  |
| p 4 m | kvadrat | 4 | da | $1 / 8$ | centar rotacije je na osi <br> simetrije |
| p 4 g | kvadrat | 4 | da | $1 / 8$ | centar rotacije nije na osi <br> simetrije |
| p 3 | šesterokut | 3 | $/$ | $1 / 3$ |  |
| p 3 m 1 | šesterokut | 3 | da | $1 / 6$ | centar rotacije je na osi <br> simetrije |
| p 31 m | šesterokut | 3 | da | $1 / 6$ |  |
| p 6 | šesterokut | 6 | $/$ | $1 / 6$ |  |
| p 6 m | šesterokut | 6 | da | $1 / 2$ |  |

Tablica 1: Klasifikacija ravninskih grupa simetrija (preuzeto iz [7] )

## 4 Primjeri Escherovih grafika

U ovom poglavlju detaljno razmatramo Escherove grafike. Poznavajući sustav 17 ravninskih grupa simetrija, Escher je otkrio svoj sistem "grupirajućih pločica". Njegove grafike popločavanja odgovaraju pet od sedamnaest Fe dorovih grupa simetrija. Na sljedećim primjerima uzorci su likovi životinja.

Na slici 6, dan je primjer ravninske grupe simetrija $p 1$ i detaljan prikaz svojstava ravninske grupe simetrija $p 1$. Uzorak grafike je patka. Osnovni uzorak je paralelogram označen crvenom bojom. Generirajuće područje je ekvivalentno osnovnom uzorku. Osnovni uzorak se translatira u smjeru okomitom na stranice paralelograma. Dakle, radi se o translacijama paralelograma koje čine grupu s obzirom na kompoziciju. Kod detaljnog prikaza osnovni uzorak i generirajuće područje su paralelogram pomoću kojeg se generira (popločava ravnina) motiv oblika slova $L$.


Slika 6: Escher drawing no. 128 i vizualna reprezentacija p1 grupe simetrija

Slika 7 predstavlja grupu simetrija $p 2$. Osnovni uzorak je paralelogram označen crvenom bojom. Žutom bojom je istaknuto generirajuće područje osnovnog uzorka. Generirajuće područje se transformira rotacijom za $180^{\circ}$ i zatim translatira u smjeru rubova osnovnog uzorka. Detaljnija reprezentacija dana je na istoj slici gdje je generiran motiv oblika slova $L$. Znak elipse označava rotaciju generirajućeg područja (u ovom slučaju radi se o $\frac{1}{2}$ površine osnovnog uzorka). Stupanj rotacije je 2 , tj. rotacija za $180^{\circ}$.


Slika 7: Escher drawing no. 8 i vizualna reprezentacija p2 grupe simetrija

Na slici 8 je Escherova grafika Escher drawing no. 109 s istaknutim osnovnim uzorkom crvene boje. Generirajuće područje uzorka je označeno žutom bojom. Vertikalno se translatira za $\frac{1}{2}$ duljine kraće stranice te se transformira kliznom simetrijom na lijevu i desnu stranu. Kod ravninske grupe simetrija $p g$ generirajuće područje je $\frac{1}{2}$ površine osnovnog uzorka.


Slika 8: Escher drawing no. 109 i vizualna reprezentacija pg grupe simetrija

Slika 9 daje uvid u grupu simetrija pgg. Znak elipse označava rotaciju generirajućeg područja uzorka za $180^{\circ}$. Generirajuće područje je istaknuto crvenom bojom. Grupa $p g g$ sadrži izometrije: rotaciju i kliznu simetriju. Generirajuće područje se rotira za $180^{\circ}$ i zatim transformira vertikalno, kliznom simetrijom. Ova metoda slijedi iz Definicije 6, Definicije 8 i svojstva izometrija.


Slika 9: Vizualna reprezentacija pgg grupe simetrija
Slika 10 predstavlja grupu $p 4$. Uzorak grafike je gušter. Crvenom bojom je označen osnovni uzorak, a žutom bojom generirajuće područje uzorka. Ravninska grupa simetrija $p 4$ sadrži izometrije: rotaciju i translaciju. Na detaljnijoj reprezentaciji prikazan je manji četverokut koji (uz istaknuto generirajuće područje) označava rotaciju za $90^{\circ}$. Generirajuće područje se transformira rotacijom, tri

## Literatura

[1] W. Barlow, Über die Die Geometrische Eigenschaften Homogener starrer Strukturen und ihre Anwendung auf Krystall, Z. Kryst. Min. 23, 1-63 (1894).
[2] F. M. BrüCKler, Kristali-simetrije, skripta, Pri-rodoslovno-matematički fakultet, Zagreb.
[3] M. Greenberg, Euclidean and non-euclidean geometries, W. H. Freeman and Co., 1993.
[4] D. Palman, Projektivna geometrija, Školska knjiga, Zagreb, 1984.
[5] D. Palman, Trokut i kružnica, Element, Cityplace, Zagreb, 1994.
[6] M. Potter, J. M. Ribando, Isometries, Tessellations and Escher, Oh My!, American Journal of Undergraduate Research, Vol. 3, No. 4, 2005.
[7] D. Schattschneider, The Plane Symmetry Groups: Their Recognition and Notation, The American Mathematical Monthly 85 (6), 439-450 (1978).
puta, u smjeru kazaljke na satu. Zatim se translatira, vertikalno i horizontalno, za duljinu stranice osnovnog uzorka (kvadrat). Radi lakšeg razumijevanja ravninske grupe simetrija $p 4$ koristi se i alternativni naziv, "grupa simetrija s obzirom na translaciju".


Slika 10: Escher drawing no. 15 i vizualna reprezentacija $p 4$ grupe simetrija
[8] A. M. SChönflies, Gruppen von Bewegungen, Math. Ann. 28 (3), 319-342 (1886).
[9] R. L. E. Schwarzenberger, The 17 plane symmetry groups, Mathematical Gazette 58, 123-131 (1974).

## Maria Čuljak

culjakmaria1@gmail.com
Sveučilište u Zagrebu
Prirodoslovno-matematički fakultet
Matematički odsjek
Bijenička cesta 30, 10000 Zagreb

## How to get KoG?

The easiest way to get your copy of KoG is by contacting the editor's office:

Marija Šimić Horvath<br>msimic@arhitekt.hr<br>Faculty of Architecture<br>Kačićeva 26, 10000 Zagreb, Croatia<br>Tel: (+385 1) 4639176<br>Fax: (+385 1) 4639465

The price of the issue is $€ 15+$ mailing expenses $€ 5$ for European countries and $€ 10$ for other parts of the world.
The amount is payable to:

| ACCOUNT NAME: | Hrvatsko društvo za geometriju i grafiku <br> Kačićeva 26, 10000 Zagreb, Croatia |
| :--- | :--- |
| IBAN: | HR862360000-1101517436 |

## Kako nabaviti KoG?

KoG je najbolje nabaviti u uredništvu časopisa:

Marija Šimić Horvath<br>msimic@arhitekt.hr<br>Arhitektonski fakultet<br>Kačićeva 26, 10000 Zagreb<br>Tel: (01) 4639176<br>Fax: (01) 4639465

Za Hrvatsku je cijena primjerka $100 \mathrm{KN}+10 \mathrm{KN}$ za poštarinu.
Nakon uplate za:

HDGG (za KoG), Kačićeva 26, 10000 Zagreb
žiro račun broj 2360000-1101517436
poslat ćemo časopis na Vašu adresu.
Ako Vas zanima tematika časopisa i rad našeg društva, preporučamo Vam da postanete članom HDGG-a (godišnja članarina iznosi 150 KN ). Za članove društva časopis je besplatan.

## INSTRUCTIONS FOR AUTHORS

SCOPE. "KoG" publishes scientific and professional papers from the fields of geometry, applied geometry and computer graphics.

Submission. Scientific papers submitted to this journal should be written in English or German, professional papers should be written in Croatian, English or German. The papers have not been published or submitted for publication elsewere.
The manuscript with wide margines and double spaced should be sent in PDF format via e-mail to one of the editors:

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\text { Sonja Gorjanc } & \text { Ema Jurkin } \\
\text { sgorjanc @ grad.hr } & \text { ema.jurkin@rgn.hr }
\end{array}
$$

The first page should contain the article title, author and coauthor names, affiliation, a short abstract in English, a list of keywords and the Mathematical subject classification.

UPON ACCEPTANCE. After the manuscript has been accepted for publication authors are requested to send its LaTex file via e-mail to the address:

> sgorjanc@grad.hr

Figures should be included in EPS or PS formats and titled by the figure number that match to the figure number in the text of the paper.

The corresponding author and coauthors will recieve hard copies of the issue free of charge.

## UPUTE ZA AUTORE

PodručJE. "KoG" objavljuje znanstvene i stručne radove iz područja geometrije, primijenjene geometrije i računalne grafike.
Uputstva za Predaju rada. Znanstveni radovi trebaju biti napisani na engleskom ili njemačkom jeziku, a stručni na hrvatskom, engleskom ili njemačkom. Rad ne smije biti objavljen niti predan na recenziju u drugim časopisima.
Rukopis sa širokim marginama i dvostrukim proredom šalje se u PDF formatu elektronskom poštom na adresu jedne od urednica:

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\text { Sonja Gorjanc } & \text { Ema Jurkin } \\
\text { sgorjanc@grad.hr } & \text { ema.jurkin@rgn.hr }
\end{array}
$$

Prva stranica treba sadržavati naslov rada, imena autora i koautora, podatke o autoru i koautorima, sažetak na hrvatskom i engleskom, ključne riječi i MSC broj.

Po PRIHVAĆANJU RADA. Tekst prihvaćenog rada autor dostavlja elektronskom poštom kao LaTeX datoteku, a slike u EPS ili PS formatu (s nazivima koji odgovaraju rednom broju slike u tekstu članka) na adresu:
sgorjanc@grad.hr

Svaki autor i koautor dobiva po jedan primjerak časopisa.



[^0]:    This issue has been financially supported by the Ministry of Science, Education and Sport of the Republic of Croatia.

[^1]:    * Supported by a joint project between the TU Berlin and the BUTE.

